

---

---

**UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION  
Washington, D.C. 20549**

---

**FORM 10-Q**

---

☒ **QUARTERLY REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

For the quarterly period ended June 30, 2019

or

☐ **TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

For the transition period from \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_

Commission File No. 001-37852

---

**PROTAGONIST THERAPEUTICS, INC.**

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

---

Delaware

98-0505495

(State or other jurisdiction of  
incorporation or organization)

(I.R.S. Employer  
Identification No.)

7707 Gateway Boulevard, Suite 140  
Newark, California 94560-1160

(510) 474-0170

(Address, including zip code, of registrant's principal executive offices)

(Telephone number, including area code, of registrant's principal executive  
offices)

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:

Title of each class	Trading Symbol(s)	Name of each exchange on which registered
Common Stock, par value \$0.00001	PTGX	The Nasdaq Stock Market, LLC

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. Yes ☒ No ☐

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted electronically every Interactive Data File required to be submitted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T (§232.405 of this chapter) during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to submit such files). Yes ☒ No ☐

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, a smaller reporting company, or an emerging growth company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer," "smaller reporting company," and "emerging growth company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act

Large accelerated filer ☐ Accelerated filer ☒

Non-accelerated filer ☐ Smaller reporting company ☒

Emerging growth company ☒

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act. ☒

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act of 1934). Yes ☐ No ☒

Indicate the number of shares outstanding of each of the issuer's classes of common stock, as of the latest practicable date.

As of July 31, 2019, there were 26,280,086 shares of the registrant's Common Stock, par value \$0.00001 per share, outstanding.

---

---

**PROTAGONIST THERAPEUTICS, INC.**  
**FORM 10-Q**  
**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

	<u>Page</u>
<b><u>PART I</u></b>	<b><u>FINANCIAL INFORMATION</u></b>
<u>Item 1.</u>	<u>Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited)</u>
	<u>Condensed Consolidated Balance Sheets</u> 1
	<u>Condensed Consolidated Statements of Operations</u> 2
	<u>Condensed Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Loss</u> 3
	<u>Condensed Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Equity</u> 4
	<u>Condensed Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows</u> 6
	<u>Notes to Unaudited Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements</u> 7
<u>Item 2.</u>	<u>Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations</u> 26
<u>Item 3.</u>	<u>Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk</u> 38
<u>Item 4.</u>	<u>Controls and Procedures</u> 38
<b><u>PART II</u></b>	<b><u>OTHER INFORMATION</u></b>
<u>Item 1.</u>	<u>Legal Proceedings</u> 39
<u>Item 1A.</u>	<u>Risk Factors</u> 39
<u>Item 2.</u>	<u>Unregistered Sales of Equity Securities and Use of Proceeds</u> 85
<u>Item 3.</u>	<u>Defaults Upon Senior Securities</u> 85
<u>Item 4.</u>	<u>Mine Safety Disclosure</u> 85
<u>Item 5.</u>	<u>Other Information</u> 85
<u>Item 6.</u>	<u>Exhibits</u> 85
	<u>SIGNATURES</u> 88

---

**PART I. – FINANCIAL INFORMATION**
**ITEM 1. FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

**PROTAGONIST THERAPEUTICS, INC.**  
**Condensed Consolidated Balance Sheets**  
**(Unaudited)**  
**(In thousands, except share and per share data)**

	June 30, 2019	December 31, 2018
<b>Assets</b>		
Current assets:		
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 71,143	\$ 82,233
Restricted cash - current	10	10
Available-for-sale securities	54,958	46,620
Receivable from collaboration partner and contract asset - related party	4,889	4,587
Research and development tax incentive receivable	1,421	1,429
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	4,899	2,624
Total current assets	137,320	137,503
Property and equipment, net	1,692	861
Restricted cash - noncurrent	450	450
Operating lease right-of-use asset	6,539	—
Deferred tax asset	2,104	658
Total assets	\$ 148,105	\$ 139,472
<b>Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity</b>		
Current liabilities:		
Accounts payable	\$ 2,787	\$ 5,711
Payable to collaboration partner - related party	810	1,061
Accrued expenses and other payables	10,845	11,163
Operating lease liability - current	1,164	—
Deferred revenue - related party	17,717	8,223
Total current liabilities	33,323	26,158
Deferred revenue - related party - noncurrent	23,850	—
Operating lease liability - noncurrent	6,616	—
Deferred rent	—	799
Total liabilities	63,789	26,957
Commitments and contingencies		
Stockholders' equity:		
Preferred stock, \$0.00001 par value, 10,000,000 shares authorized; no shares issued and outstanding	—	—
Common stock, \$0.00001 par value, 90,000,000 shares authorized; 24,967,603 and 23,187,219 shares issued and outstanding as of June 30, 2019 and December 31, 2018, respectively	—	—
Additional paid-in capital	268,234	253,222
Accumulated other comprehensive loss	(167)	(233)
Accumulated deficit	(183,751)	(140,474)
Total stockholders' equity	84,316	112,515
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	\$ 148,105	\$ 139,472

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements.

**PROTAGONIST THERAPEUTICS, INC.**  
**Condensed Consolidated Statements of Operations**  
**(Unaudited)**  
**(In thousands, except share and per share data)**

	Three Months Ended June 30,		Six Months Ended June 30,	
	2019	2018	2019	2018
License and collaboration revenue - related party	\$ (8,189)	\$ 11,674	\$ (6,629)	\$ 22,455
Operating expenses:				
Research and development	19,355	17,735	31,799	33,103
General and administrative	3,863	3,178	7,627	6,820
Total operating expenses	23,218	20,913	39,426	39,923
Loss from operations	(31,407)	(9,239)	(46,055)	(17,468)
Interest income	604	576	1,333	1,144
Loss before income tax benefit	(30,803)	(8,663)	(44,722)	(16,324)
Income tax benefit	1,629	—	1,445	—
Net loss	\$ (29,174)	\$ (8,663)	\$ (43,277)	\$ (16,324)
Net loss per share, basic and diluted	\$ (1.18)	\$ (0.41)	\$ (1.77)	\$ (0.77)
Weighted-average shares used to compute net loss per share, basic and diluted	24,662,779	21,207,234	24,481,186	21,160,076

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements.

**PROTAGONIST THERAPEUTICS, INC.**  
**Condensed Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Loss**  
**(Unaudited)**  
**(In thousands)**

	<b>Three Months Ended</b>		<b>Six Months Ended</b>	
	<b>June 30,</b>		<b>June 30,</b>	
	<b>2019</b>	<b>2018</b>	<b>2019</b>	<b>2018</b>
Net loss	\$ (29,174)	\$ (8,663)	\$ (43,277)	\$ (16,324)
Other comprehensive loss:				
Loss on translation of foreign operations	(19)	(68)	(4)	(86)
Unrealized gain on available-for-sale securities	41	54	70	6
Comprehensive loss	<u>\$ (29,152)</u>	<u>\$ (8,677)</u>	<u>\$ (43,211)</u>	<u>\$ (16,404)</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements.

**PROTAGONIST THERAPEUTICS, INC.**  
**Condensed Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Equity**  
**(Unaudited)**  
**(In thousands, except share data)**

	Common Stock		Additional Paid-In Capital	Accumulated Other Comprehensive Loss	Accumulated Deficit	Total Stockholders' Equity
	Shares	Amount				
Balance at March 31, 2019	23,392,534	\$ —	\$ 255,591	\$ (189)	\$ (154,577)	\$ 100,825
Stock-based compensation expense	—	—	2,013	—	—	2,013
Common stock issued pursuant to at-the-market offering, net of issuance costs	921,684	—	10,543	—	—	10,543
Common stock issued pursuant to exercise of Exchange Warrants	599,997	—	—	—	—	—
Common stock issued under equity incentive and employee stock purchase plans	53,388	—	87	—	—	87
Other comprehensive gain	—	—	—	22	—	22
Net loss	—	—	—	—	(29,174)	(29,174)
Balance at June 30, 2019	24,967,603	\$ —	\$ 268,234	\$ (167)	\$ (183,751)	\$ 84,316

	Common Stock		Additional Paid-In Capital	Accumulated Other Comprehensive Loss	Accumulated Deficit	Total Stockholders' Equity
	Shares	Amount				
Balance at March 31, 2018	21,163,590	\$ —	\$ 223,904	\$ (72)	\$ (109,211)	\$ 114,621
Stock-based compensation expense	—	—	1,645	—	—	1,645
Common stock issued under equity incentive and employee stock purchase plans	53,904	—	73	—	—	73
Other comprehensive gain	—	—	—	(14)	—	(14)
Net loss	—	—	—	—	(8,663)	(8,663)
Balance at June 30, 2018	21,217,494	\$ —	\$ 225,622	\$ (86)	\$ (117,874)	\$ 107,662

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements.

**PROTAGONIST THERAPEUTICS, INC.**  
**Condensed Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Equity (Continued)**  
**(Unaudited)**  
**(In thousands, except share data)**

	Common Stock		Additional Paid-In Capital	Accumulated Other Comprehensive Loss	Accumulated Deficit	Total Stockholders' Equity
	Shares	Amount				
Balance at December 31, 2018	23,187,219	\$ —	\$ 253,222	\$ (233)	\$ (140,474)	\$ 112,515
Stock-based compensation expense	—	—	3,992	—	—	3,992
Common stock issued pursuant to at-the-market offering, net of issuance costs	921,684	—	10,543	—	—	10,543
Common stock issued pursuant to exercise of Exchange Warrants	599,997	—	—	—	—	—
Common stock issued under equity incentive and employee stock purchase plans	258,703	—	477	—	—	477
Other comprehensive gain	—	—	—	66	—	66
Net loss	—	—	—	—	(43,277)	(43,277)
Balance at June 30, 2019	24,967,603	\$ —	\$ 268,234	\$ (167)	\$ (183,751)	\$ 84,316

	Common Stock		Additional Paid-In Capital	Accumulated Other Comprehensive Loss	Accumulated Deficit	Total Stockholders' Equity
	Shares	Amount				
Balance at December 31, 2017	21,088,306	\$ —	\$ 222,188	\$ (6)	\$ (101,550)	\$ 120,632
Stock-based compensation expense	—	—	2,830	—	—	2,830
Common stock issued under equity incentive and employee stock purchase plans	129,188	—	604	—	—	604
Other comprehensive gain	—	—	—	(80)	—	(80)
Net loss	—	—	—	—	(16,324)	(16,324)
Balance at June 30, 2018	21,217,494	\$ —	\$ 225,622	\$ (86)	\$ (117,874)	\$ 107,662

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements.

**PROTAGONIST THERAPEUTICS, INC.**  
**Condensed Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows**  
**(Unaudited)**  
**(In thousands)**

	Six Months Ended June 30,	
	2019	2018
<b>CASH FLOWS FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES</b>		
Net loss	\$ (43,277)	\$ (16,324)
Adjustments to reconcile net loss to net cash used in operating activities:		
Stock-based compensation	3,992	2,830
Operating lease right-of-use asset amortization	903	—
Change in deferred tax asset	(1,446)	—
Depreciation and amortization	306	248
Net (accretion of discount) amortization of premium on available-for-sale securities	(209)	110
Changes in operating assets and liabilities:		
Research and development tax incentive receivable	—	(963)
Receivable from collaboration partner and contract asset - related party	(302)	(3,968)
Prepaid expenses and other assets	(1,804)	807
Accounts payable	(2,998)	1,014
Payable to collaboration partner - related party	(251)	276
Accrued expenses and other payables	(319)	3,984
Operating lease liability	(931)	—
Deferred revenue - related party	33,344	(18,550)
Net cash used in operating activities	(12,992)	(30,536)
<b>CASH FLOWS FROM INVESTING ACTIVITIES</b>		
Purchase of available-for-sale securities	(52,459)	(39,012)
Proceeds from maturities of available-for-sale securities	44,400	27,035
Purchases of property and equipment, net	(1,058)	(276)
Net cash used in investing activities	(9,117)	(12,253)
<b>CASH FLOWS FROM FINANCING ACTIVITIES</b>		
Proceeds from at-the-market offering, net of issuance costs	10,543	—
Proceeds from issuance of common stock upon exercise of stock options and purchases under employee stock purchase plan	477	604
Net cash provided by financing activities	11,020	604
Effect of exchange rate changes on cash, cash equivalents and restricted cash	(1)	20
Net decrease in cash, cash equivalents and restricted cash	(11,090)	(42,165)
Cash, cash equivalents and restricted cash, beginning of period	82,693	106,489
Cash, cash equivalents and restricted cash, end of period	\$ 71,603	\$ 64,324
<b>SUPPLEMENTAL DISCLOSURES OF NON-CASH FINANCING AND INVESTING INFORMATION:</b>		
Purchases of property and equipment in accounts payable and accrued liabilities	\$ 82	\$ 8
Tenant improvement allowance reimbursement	\$ 469	\$ —

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements.



**PROTAGONIST THERAPEUTICS, INC.**  
**Notes to Unaudited Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements**

**Note 1. Organization and Description of Business**

Protagonist Therapeutics, Inc. (the “Company”) was incorporated in the state of Delaware on August 22, 2006 and is headquartered in Newark, California. The Company is a clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company with a proprietary technology platform that enables the discovery and development of novel constrained peptide-based drug candidates that address significant unmet medical needs. Protagonist Pty Limited (“Protagonist Australia”) is a wholly-owned subsidiary of the Company and is located in Brisbane, Queensland, Australia. Protagonist Australia was incorporated in Australia in September 2001. The Company manages its operations as a single operating segment.

***Liquidity***

The Company has incurred net losses from operations since inception and has an accumulated deficit of \$183.8 million as of June 30, 2019. The Company’s ultimate success depends on the outcome of its research and development and collaboration activities. The Company expects to incur additional losses in the future and anticipates the need to raise additional capital to continue to execute its long-range business plan. Through June 30, 2019, the Company has financed its operations primarily through private placements of redeemable convertible preferred stock, offerings of common stock and payments received under license and collaboration agreements.

**Note 2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies**

***Basis of Presentation***

The accompanying unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements have been prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States of America (“GAAP”) and applicable rules and regulations of the SEC regarding interim financial reporting. As permitted under those rules, certain footnotes or other financial information that are normally required by GAAP have been condensed or omitted, and accordingly the consolidated balance sheet as of December 31, 2018 has been derived from the Company’s audited consolidated financial statements at that date but does not include all of the information required by GAAP for complete consolidated financial statements. These unaudited interim condensed consolidated financial statements have been prepared on the same basis as the Company’s annual consolidated financial statements and, in the opinion of management, reflect all adjustments (consisting of normal recurring adjustments) that are necessary for a fair statement of the Company’s consolidated financial information. The results of operations for the three and six months ended June 30, 2019 are not necessarily indicative of the results to be expected for the year ending December 31, 2019 or for any other interim period or for any other future year.

The accompanying condensed consolidated financial statements and related financial information should be read in conjunction with the audited consolidated financial statements and the related notes thereto for the year ended December 31, 2018 included in the Company’s Annual Report on Form 10-K, filed with the SEC on March 12, 2019.

***Principles of Consolidation***

The accompanying unaudited interim condensed consolidated financial statements include the accounts of the Company and its wholly owned subsidiary. All intercompany transactions and balances have been eliminated upon consolidation.

### ***Use of Estimates***

The preparation of the condensed consolidated financial statements in conformity with GAAP requires management to make estimates, assumptions and judgments that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities as of the date of the condensed consolidated financial statements and the reported amounts of revenues and expenses during the reporting period. On an ongoing basis, management evaluates its estimates, including those related to revenue recognition, accruals for research and development activities, stock-based compensation, income taxes, research and development tax incentives, available-for-sale securities and leases. Estimates related to revenue recognition include actual costs incurred versus total estimated budgeted costs of the Company's deliverables to determine percentage of completion, and application and estimates of constraints in the determination of the transaction price under its license and collaboration agreements. Management bases these estimates on historical and anticipated results, trends, and various other assumptions that the Company believes are reasonable under the circumstances, including assumptions as to forecasted amounts and future events. Actual results may differ significantly from those estimates.

### ***Concentrations of Credit Risk***

Financial instruments that potentially subject the Company to a concentration of credit risk consist of cash, cash equivalents and available-for-sale securities. Substantially all of the Company's cash is held by two financial institutions that management believes are of high credit quality. Such deposits may, at times, exceed federally insured limits. The primary focus of the Company's investment strategy is to preserve capital and to meet liquidity requirements. The Company's cash equivalents and available-for-sale securities are managed by external managers within the guidelines of the Company's investment policy. The Company's investment policy addresses the level of credit exposure by limiting concentration in any one corporate issuer and establishing a minimum allowable credit rating. To manage its credit risk exposure, the Company maintains its portfolio of cash equivalents and available-for-sale securities in fixed income securities denominated and payable in U.S. dollars. Permissible investments of fixed income securities include obligations of the U.S. government and its agencies, money market instruments including commercial paper and negotiable certificates of deposit, and highly rated corporate debt obligations and money market funds.

### ***Cash Equivalents***

Cash equivalents that are readily convertible to cash are stated at cost, which approximates fair value. The Company considers all highly liquid investments purchased with an original maturity of three months or less to be cash equivalents.

### ***Restricted Cash***

Restricted cash consists of cash balances primarily held as security in connection with a letter of credit related to the Company's facility lease entered into in March 2017 and the Company's corporate credit card.

### ***Cash as Reported in Condensed Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows***

Cash as reported in the condensed consolidated statements of cash flows includes the aggregate amounts of cash and cash equivalents and the restricted cash as presented on the condensed consolidated balance sheets.

[Table of Contents](#)

Cash as reported in the condensed consolidated statements of cash flows consists of (in thousands):

	June 30,	
	2019	2018
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 71,143	\$ 63,864
Restricted cash - current	10	10
Restricted cash - noncurrent	450	450
Cash balance in condensed consolidated statements of cash flows	<u>\$ 71,603</u>	<u>\$ 64,324</u>

### ***Available-for-Sale Securities***

All marketable securities have been classified as “available-for-sale” and are carried at estimated fair value as determined based upon quoted market prices or pricing models for similar securities. Management determines the appropriate classification of its marketable securities at the time of purchase and reevaluates such designation as of each balance sheet date. Short-term marketable securities have maturities greater than three months but no longer than 365 days as of the balance sheet date. Long-term marketable securities have maturities of 365 days or longer as of the balance sheet date. Unrealized gains and losses are excluded from earnings and are reported as a component of comprehensive loss. Realized gains and losses and declines in fair value judged to be other than temporary, if any, on available-for-sale securities are included in interest income. The cost of securities sold is based on the specific-identification method. Interest on marketable securities is included in interest income.

### ***Leases***

The Company adopted Accounting Standards Topic 842, *Leases*, (“ASC 842”) effective January 1, 2019. The Company determines if an arrangement is a lease at inception. Pursuant to ASC 842, operating leases are included in operating lease right-of-use (“ROU”) assets, operating lease liabilities, and noncurrent operating lease liabilities on the consolidated balance sheets. Operating lease ROU assets and operating lease liabilities are recognized based on the present value of the future minimum lease payments over the lease term at commencement date. If the Company’s leases do not provide an implicit rate, the Company uses its incremental borrowing rate based on the information available at commencement date in determining the present value of future payments. The operating lease ROU asset also includes any lease payments made and excludes lease incentives and initial direct costs incurred. Lease terms include options to extend or terminate the lease when it is reasonably certain that the Company will exercise that option. Lease expense for minimum lease payments is recognized on a straight-line basis over the lease term.

The Company records tenant improvement allowances as a reduction to the ROU asset with the impact of the decrease recognized prospectively over the remaining lease term. The leasehold improvements will be amortized over the shorter of their useful life or the remaining term of the lease.

### ***Revenue Recognition***

The Company follows Accounting Standards Codification Topic 606, *Revenue from Contracts with Customers* (“ASC 606”). Under ASC 606, the Company recognizes revenue when its customer obtains control of promised goods or services, in an amount that reflects the consideration which the Company expects to receive in exchange for those goods or services. To determine revenue recognition for arrangements that the Company determines are within the scope of ASC 606, the Company performs the following five steps: (i) identify the contract(s) with a customer; (ii) identify the performance obligations in the contract; (iii) determine the transaction price; (iv) allocate the transaction price to the performance obligations in the contract; and (v) recognize revenue when (or as) the Company satisfies a performance obligation. The Company applies the five-step model to contracts when it is probable that the Company will collect the consideration it is entitled to in exchange for the goods or services it transfers to the customer. At contract inception, the Company assesses the goods or services promised within each contract, determines those that are performance obligations, and assesses whether each promised good or service is distinct. The Company then recognizes as revenue the amount of the transaction price that is allocated to the respective performance obligations when (or as) the performance obligations are satisfied. The Company constrains its estimate of the transaction price up to the amount (the “variable consideration constraint”) that a significant reversal of recognized revenue is not probable.

*Licenses of intellectual property:* If a license to the Company's intellectual property is determined to be distinct from the other performance obligations identified in an arrangement, the Company recognizes revenue from non-refundable, up-front fees allocated to the license when the license is transferred to the customer and the customer is able to use and benefit from the license. For licenses that are bundled with other promises, the Company utilizes judgment to assess the nature of the combined performance obligation to determine whether the combined performance obligation is satisfied over time or at a point in time and, if over time, the appropriate method of measuring proportional performance for purposes of recognizing revenue from non-refundable, up-front fees. The Company evaluates the measure of proportional performance each reporting period and, if necessary, adjusts the measure of performance and related revenue recognition.

*Milestone payments:* At the inception of each arrangement or amendment that includes development, regulatory or commercial milestone payments, the Company evaluates whether the milestones are considered probable of being reached and estimates the amount to be included in the transaction price. ASC 606 suggests two alternatives to use when estimating the amount of variable consideration: the expected value method and the most likely amount method. Under the expected value method, an entity considers the sum of probability-weighted amounts in a range of possible consideration amounts. Under the most likely amount method, an entity considers the single most likely amount in a range of possible consideration amounts. Whichever method is used, it should be consistently applied throughout the life of the contract; however, it is not necessary for the Company to use the same approach for all contracts. The Company expects to use the most likely amount method for development and regulatory milestone payments. If it is probable that a significant revenue reversal would not occur, the associated milestone value is included in the transaction price. Milestone payments that are not within the control of the Company or the licensee, such as regulatory approvals, are not considered probable of being achieved until those approvals are received. The transaction price is then allocated to each performance obligation on a relative stand-alone selling price basis. The Company recognizes revenue as or when the performance obligations under the contract are satisfied. At the end of each subsequent reporting period, the Company re-evaluates the probability or achievement of each such milestone and any related constraint, and if necessary, adjusts its estimates of the overall transaction price. Any such adjustments are recorded on a cumulative catch-up basis, which would affect revenues and earnings in the period of adjustment.

*Royalties:* For arrangements that include sales-based royalties, including milestone payments based on the level of sales, and the license is deemed to be the predominant item to which the royalties relate, the Company recognizes revenue at the later of (i) when the related sales occur, or (ii) when the performance obligation to which some or all of the royalty has been allocated has been satisfied (or partially satisfied).

Upfront payments and fees are recorded as deferred revenue upon receipt or when due and may require deferral of revenue recognition to a future period until the Company performs its obligations under these arrangements. Amounts payable to the Company are recorded as accounts receivable when the Company's right to consideration is unconditional. Amounts payable to the Company and not yet billed to the collaboration partner are recorded as contract assets. The Company does not assess whether a contract has a significant financing component if the expectation at contract inception is such that the period between payment by the customer and the transfer of the promised goods or services to the customer will be one year or less.

Contractual cost sharing payments made to a customer are accounted for as a reduction to the transaction price if such payments are not related to distinct goods or services received from the customer.

Contracts may be amended to account for changes in contract specifications and requirements. Contract modifications exist when the amendment either creates new, or changes existing, enforceable rights and obligations. When contract modifications create new performance obligations and the increase in consideration approximates the standalone selling price for goods and services related to such new performance obligations as adjusted for specific facts and circumstances of the contract, the modification is considered to be a separate contract and revenue is recognized prospectively. If a contract modification is not accounted for as a separate contract, the Company accounts for the promised goods or services not yet transferred at the date of the contract modification (the remaining promised goods or services) prospectively, as if it were a termination of the existing contract and the creation of a new contract, if the remaining goods or services are distinct from the goods or services transferred on or before the date of the contract.

modification. The Company accounts for a contract modification as if it were a part of the existing contract if the remaining goods or services are not distinct and, therefore, form part of a single performance obligation that is partially satisfied at the date of the contract modification. In such case the effect that the contract modification has on the transaction price, and on the entity's measure of progress toward complete satisfaction of the performance obligation, is recognized as an adjustment to revenue (either as an increase in or a reduction of revenue) at the date of the contract modification (the adjustment to revenue is made on a cumulative catch-up basis).

The period between when the Company transfers control of promised goods or services and when the Company receives payment is expected to be one year or less, and that expectation is consistent with the Company's historical experience. Upfront payment contract liabilities resulting from the Company's license and collaboration agreements do not represent a financing component as the payment is not financing the transfer of goods and services, and the technology underlying the licenses granted reflects research and development expenses already incurred by the Company. As such, the Company does not adjust its revenues for the effects of a significant financing component.

### ***Research and Development Costs***

Research and development costs are expensed as incurred, unless there is an alternate future use in other research and development projects or otherwise. Research and development costs include salaries and benefits, stock-based compensation expense, laboratory supplies and facility-related overhead, outside contracted services including clinical trial costs, manufacturing and process development costs for both clinical and pre-clinical materials, research costs, development milestone payments under license and collaboration agreements, and other consulting services.

The Company accrues for estimated costs of research and development activities conducted by third-party service providers, which include the conduct of pre-clinical studies and clinical trials, and contract manufacturing activities. The Company records the estimated costs of research and development activities based upon the estimated services provided but not yet invoiced and includes these costs in accrued expenses and other payables in the condensed consolidated balance sheets and within research and development expense in the condensed consolidated statements of operations. The Company accrues for these costs based on factors such as estimates of the work completed and in accordance with agreements established with its third-party service providers. As actual costs become known, the Company adjusts its accrued liabilities. The Company has not experienced any material differences between accrued liabilities and actual costs incurred. However, the status and timing of actual services performed, number of patients enrolled, and the rate of patient enrollment may vary from the Company's estimates, resulting in adjustments to expense in future periods. Changes in these estimates that result in material changes to the Company's accruals could materially affect the Company's results of operations.

### ***Research and Development Tax Incentive***

The Company is eligible under the AusIndustry research and development tax incentive program to obtain a cash refund from the Australian Taxation Office. The refundable cash tax incentive is available to the Company on the basis of specific criteria with which the Company must comply. Specifically, the Company must have annual turnover of less than AUD 20.0 million and cannot be controlled by income tax exempt entities. The refundable cash research and development tax incentive is recognized as a reduction to research and development expense when the right to receive has been attained and funds are considered to be collectible. The tax incentive is denominated in Australian dollars and, therefore, the related receivable is remeasured into U.S. dollars as of each reporting date. The Company may alternatively be eligible for a taxable credit in the form of a non-cash tax incentive. The Company evaluates its eligibility under tax incentive programs as of each balance sheet date and makes accrual and related adjustments based on the most current and relevant data available.

### ***Net Loss per Share***

Basic net loss per share is calculated by dividing the Company's net loss by the weighted average number of shares of common stock and Exchange Warrants outstanding during the period, without consideration of potentially dilutive securities. In accordance with Accounting Standards Codification Topic 260, *Earnings Per Share*, the Exchange Warrants are included in the computation of basic net loss per share because the exercise price is negligible,

and they are fully vested and exercisable after the original issuance date. Diluted net loss per share is the same as basic net loss per share for all periods presented since the effect of potentially dilutive securities is anti-dilutive given the net loss of the Company. See Note 9. Stockholder's Equity for additional information regarding the Exchange Warrants.

### ***Recently Adopted Accounting Pronouncements***

In February 2016, the Financial Accounting Standards Board ("FASB") issued Accounting Standards Update ("ASU") No. 2016-02, *Leases* (Topic 842). In July 2018, the FASB issued ASU No. 2018-10, *Codification Improvements to Topic 842, Leases*, which provides clarification to ASU 2016-02. These ASUs (collectively, the new lease standard) require an entity to recognize a lease liability and a ROU asset on the balance sheet for leases with lease terms of more than twelve months. Lessor accounting is largely unchanged, while lessees are no longer provided with a source of off-balance sheet financing. In July 2018, the FASB issued ASU No. 2018-11, *Leases* (Topic 842) - Targeted Improvements, which allows entities to elect an optional transition method where entities may continue to apply the existing lease guidance during the comparative periods and apply the new lease requirements through a cumulative effect adjustment in the period of adoption rather than in the earliest period presented. The Company adopted the new lease standard using the modified retrospective approach effective January 1, 2019 and elected the package of transitional practical expedients, such that, for leases existing prior to the adoption of ASC 842, the Company did not need to reassess whether contracts are leases, retained historical lease classification and historical initial direct costs classification. The Company did not elect the hindsight practical expedient to determine the lease term for existing leases. At January 1, 2019, the Company derecognized its deferred rent liability in the amount of \$0.8 million, and recognized a ROU asset and related lease liability in the amount of \$7.5 million and \$8.3 million, respectively.

In June 2018, the FASB issued ASU No. 2018-07, *Compensation – Stock Compensation (Topic 718), Improvements to Nonemployee Share-Based Payment Accounting*, which is intended to simplify the accounting for nonemployee share-based payment transactions by expanding the scope of Topic 718 to include share-based payment transactions for acquiring goods and services from nonemployees. The Company adopted this guidance prospectively as of January 1, 2019. The adoption of this guidance did not have a material impact on the Company's financial position, results of operations or liquidity.

### ***Recently Issued Accounting Pronouncements Not Yet Adopted as of June 30, 2019***

In June 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-13, *Financial Instruments - Credit Losses (Topic 326)*, which is intended to provide financial statement users with more useful information about expected credit losses on financial assets held by a reporting entity at each reporting date. In May 2019, the FASB issued ASU No. 2019-05, which amended the new standard by providing targeted transition relief. The new guidance replaces the existing incurred loss impairment methodology with a methodology that requires consideration of a broader range of reasonable and supportable forward-looking information to estimate all expected credit losses. This guidance is effective for the fiscal years and interim periods within those years beginning after December 15, 2019 and early adoption is permitted for fiscal years and interim periods within those years beginning after December 15, 2018. The Company is currently evaluating the impact of this new guidance on its consolidated financial statements and disclosures.

In August 2018, the FASB issued ASU No. 2018-13, *Fair Value Measurement (Topic 820) – Disclosure Framework – Changes to the Disclosure Requirements for Fair Value Measurement*, which modifies the disclosure requirements on fair value measurements and is intended to improve the effectiveness of disclosures, including the consideration of costs and benefits. The guidance is effective for the fiscal years and interim periods within those years beginning after January 1, 2020. Early adoption is permitted, and an entity is permitted to early adopt any removed or modified disclosures and delay adoption of additional disclosures until their effective date. The Company does not expect this new guidance to impact its consolidated financial statements and is currently evaluating the impact on its disclosures.

In November 2018, the FASB issued ASU No. 2018-18, *Collaborative Arrangements (Topic 808): Clarifying the Interaction Between Topic 808 and Topic 606*, which is intended to clarify the circumstances under which certain transactions in collaborative arrangements should be accounted for under the revenue recognition standard. Certain transactions between collaboration arrangement participants should be accounted for as revenue under ASC Topic 606

when the collaborative arrangement participant is a customer in the context of a unit of account. This guidance is effective for fiscal years and interim periods within those years beginning after December 15, 2020. Early adoption is permitted. The Company is in the process of assessing the impact of this new guidance on its consolidated financial statements and disclosures.

### **Note 3. License and Collaboration Agreement**

#### ***Agreement Terms***

On May 26, 2017, the Company and Janssen Biotech, Inc., (“Janssen”), one of the Janssen Pharmaceutical Companies of Johnson & Johnson, entered into an exclusive license and collaboration agreement (the “Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement”) for the development, manufacture and commercialization of PTG-200 worldwide for the treatment of Crohn’s disease (“CD”) and ulcerative colitis (“UC”). Janssen is a related party to the Company as Johnson & Johnson Innovation - JJDC, Inc., a significant stockholder of the Company, and Janssen are both subsidiaries of Johnson & Johnson. PTG-200 is the Company’s oral gut-restricted Interleukin 23 receptor (“IL-23R”) antagonist drug candidate currently in development. The Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement became effective on July 13, 2017. Upon the effectiveness of the agreement, the Company received a non-refundable, upfront cash payment of \$50.0 million from Janssen.

Under the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement, the Company granted to Janssen an exclusive worldwide license to develop, manufacture and commercialize PTG-200 and related IL-23R compounds for all indications, including CD and UC. The Company was responsible, at its own expense, for the conduct of the Phase 1 clinical trial for PTG-200, and Janssen is responsible for the conduct of the first Phase 2 clinical trial for PTG-200 in CD, including filing the U.S. Investigational New Drug application (“IND”). Development costs for the Phase 2 clinical trial are shared between the parties on an 80/20 basis, with Janssen assuming the larger share.

The Company entered into an amendment (the “First Amendment”) to the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement effective May 7, 2019. The First Amendment builds upon the Company’s ongoing development collaboration with Janssen for PTG-200 and, upon the effectiveness of the First Amendment, the Company became eligible to receive a \$25.0 million payment from Janssen, which was received during the second quarter of 2019. The First Amendment expands the scope of the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement by supporting research efforts towards identifying and developing second-generation IL-23 receptor antagonists (“second-generation compounds”).

As part of the services added in the First Amendment, Janssen will pay certain costs and milestones related to advancing pre-clinical candidates from the second-generation research program into Phase 1 studies, including funding of a certain number of full-time equivalent employees (“FTEs”) at the Company for a set period of time and funding of the research activities of such FTEs. The Company will pay 100% of the costs for the Phase 1 studies for the first second-generation compound, and 50% of the costs of the Phase 1 studies for the second and third second-generation compounds; thereafter Janssen will pay 100% of the Phase 1 costs. Development costs for the Phase 2 clinical trials for second-generation compounds are shared between the parties on an 80/20 basis, with Janssen assuming the larger share. The Company’s Phase 1 and Phase 2 development costs are also limited by overall spending caps.

The Company was eligible to receive a \$25.0 million milestone payment upon Janssen’s filing of the IND. This amount was considered constrained up until the First Amendment became effective, at which time the Company became eligible to receive the \$25.0 million payment from Janssen. Payments to the Company for research and development services are generally billed and collected as services are performed, including research activities and Phase 1 and Phase 2 development activities. Janssen bills the Company for its 20% share of the Phase 2 development costs as expenses are incurred by Janssen. Milestone payments are paid when achieved.

Pursuant to the First Amendment, the Company will continue to receive clinical development, regulatory and commercial milestones if Janssen elects to retain its license following completion of Phase 2a and/or Phase 2b studies with PTG-200 and/or second-generation compounds. Following the conclusion of the planned Phase 2a portion of a



Phase 2 clinical trial with respect to PTG-200, if Janssen elects to maintain its license rights and continue the development of PTG-200 in the Phase 2b portion of such clinical trials (the “Amended First Opt-in”) prior to dosing of the third patient in the first Phase 2 clinical trial of second-generation compound, the Company would be eligible to receive a \$50.0 million payment. Following the conclusion of the planned Phase 2b portion of a Phase 2 clinical trial with respect to PTG-200 or the first Phase 2 clinical trial of second-generation compounds, if Janssen elects to maintain its license rights (the “Amended Second Opt-in”), among other things, the Company would be eligible to receive a \$50.0 million payment. Formerly, the first and second opt-in payments were \$125.0 million and \$215.0 million, respectively. If Janssen does not make the Amended Second Opt-in election, with respect to either PTG-200 or a second-generation compound, the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement would terminate.

Upon making the Amended Second Opt-in election, Janssen will receive exclusive, worldwide rights to develop and commercialize PTG-200 and any second-generation compounds derived from the research collaboration contemplated by the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement and the First Amendment. Pursuant to the First Amendment, the Company will be eligible to receive tiered royalties on net product sales at percentages ranging from mid-single digits to ten. As set forth in the First Amendment, the Company will also be eligible for certain additional milestone payments including a potential payment of either \$100.0 million upon a Phase 3 CD clinical trial reaching a primary clinical endpoint with respect to PTG-200 or \$115.0 million upon a Phase 3 CD clinical trial reaching a primary clinical endpoint with respect to a second-generation compound. Under the terms of the First Amendment, the Company will be eligible to receive up to \$1.0 billion in research, development, regulatory and sales milestones.

The Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement remains in effect until the royalty obligations cease following patent and regulatory expiry, unless terminated earlier. Upon a termination of the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement, all rights revert back to the Company, and in certain circumstances, if such termination occurs during ongoing clinical trials, Janssen would, if requested, provide certain financial and operational support to the Company for the completion of such trials.

### ***Revenue Recognition***

The Company has concluded that the amended Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement continues to contain a single performance obligation including the development license; second-generation compound research services; Phase 1 development services for PTG-200 and two potential second-generation compounds; the Company’s services associated with Phase 2 development for PTG-200 until Phase 2a; the Company’s services associated with Phase 2 development for a second-generation product until the dosing of the third patient in Phase 2b; and all other such services that the Company may perform at the request of Janssen to support the development of PTG-200, second-generation research services, or the development of a second-generation compound. The Company concluded that the Amended First Opt-in Election and the Amended Second Opt-in Election options are not considered to be material rights.

The Company determined that the license was not distinct from the added research and development services within the context of the agreement because the added research and development services significantly increase the utility of the intellectual property. The Company also determined that the remaining research and development services are not distinct from the partially delivered combined promise comprised under the agreement prior to the First Amendment of the development license and PTG-200 services, including compound supply and other services. Therefore, the First Amendment is treated as if it were part of the original Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement. The First Amendment will be accounted for as if it were an extension of services under the initial Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement by applying a cumulative catch-up adjustment to revenue. As of the effective date of the First Amendment, the Company calculated the adjusted cumulative revenue under the amended Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement by updating the transaction price for the incremental consideration to be received, net of the incremental development cost reimbursement to be paid to Janssen, and an updated percentage complete, which resulted in a cumulative adjustment that reduced revenue by \$9.4 million.

The contract duration is defined as the period in which parties to the contract have present enforceable rights and obligations. For revenue recognition purposes, the Company determined that the duration of the Janssen License



## [Table of Contents](#)

and Collaboration Agreement, as amended, began on the effective date of July 13, 2017 and ends upon the later of end of Phase 2a for PTG-200 or upon dosing of the third patient in Phase 2b for a second-generation compound.

The Company uses the most likely amount method to estimate variable consideration included in the transaction price. Variable consideration after the First Amendment consists of future milestone payments and cost sharing payments from Janssen for agreed upon services offset by Phase 2 development costs reimbursement payable to Janssen. Cost sharing payments from Janssen relate to the agreed upon services for Phase 2 activities that the Company performs within the duration of the contract are included in the transaction price at an amount equal to 80% of the estimated budgeted costs for these activities, including primarily internal full-time equivalent effort and third party contract costs. Cost sharing payments to Janssen relate to agreed upon services for Phase 2 activities that Janssen performs within the duration of the contract are not a distinct service that Janssen transfers to the Company. Therefore, the consideration payable to Janssen is accounted for as a reduction in the transaction price.

The Company determined that the new transaction price of the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement was \$109.2 million as of June 30, 2019, an increase of \$48.6 million from the transaction price of \$60.6 million at March 31, 2019. In order to determine the transaction price, the Company evaluated all payments to be received during the duration of the contract, net of Phase 2 development costs reimbursement expected to be payable to Janssen. The Company determined that the transaction price includes the \$50.0 million upfront payment, the \$25.0 million payment payable upon the effectiveness of the First Amendment, \$17.3 million of reimbursement from Janssen for services performed for PTG-200 Phase 2 and for second-generation compound research costs and other services, and \$16.9 million of estimated variable consideration. The Company evaluated whether the variable component of the transaction price should be constrained to ensure that a significant reversal of revenue recognized on a cumulative basis as of June 30, 2019 is not probable. The Company concluded that the variable consideration constraint does not further decrease the estimated transaction price as of June 30, 2019. The additional potential development, regulatory and sales milestone payments after the completion of Phase 2b activities that the Company is eligible to receive are outside the contract term and as such have been excluded from the transaction price. The increase in transaction price following the First Amendment was due primarily to the collection of the \$25 million payment and increases in reimbursable costs related to new and extended research and development services, offset by Phase 2 development costs reimbursement payable to Janssen.

The Company re-evaluates the transaction price, including variable consideration, at the end of each reporting period and as uncertain events are resolved or other changes in circumstances occur. The Company and Janssen make quarterly cost sharing payments to one another in amounts necessary to ensure that each party bears its contractual share of the overall shared costs incurred.

The Company utilizes a cost-based input method to measure proportional performance and to calculate the corresponding amount of revenue to recognize. In applying the cost-based input methods of revenue recognition, the Company uses actual costs incurred relative to expected costs to fulfill the combined performance obligation. These costs consist primarily of internal full-time equivalent effort and third-party contract costs. Revenue will be recognized based on actual costs incurred as a percentage of total estimated costs as the Company completes its performance obligations. A cost-based input method of revenue recognition requires management to make estimates of costs to complete the Company's performance obligations. The Company believes this is the best measure of progress because other measures do not reflect how the Company transfers its performance obligation to Janssen. In making such estimates, significant judgment is required to evaluate assumptions related to cost estimates. The cumulative effect of revisions to estimated costs to complete the Company's performance obligations will be recorded in the period in which changes are identified and amounts can be reasonably estimated. A significant change in these assumptions and estimates could have a material impact on the timing and amount of revenue recognized in future periods.

For the three months ended June 30, 2019, the Company recorded a \$9.4 million cumulative catchup adjustment reducing license and collaboration revenue, partially offset by \$1.2 million of license and collaboration revenue following the contract modification for the First Amendment. For the three months ended June 30, 2018, the Company recognized \$11.7 million of license and collaboration revenue.

[Table of Contents](#)

For the six months ended June 30, 2019, the Company recorded a \$9.4 million cumulative catchup adjustment reducing license and collaboration revenue, partially offset by \$1.2 million of license and collaboration revenue following the contract modification for the First Amendment and \$1.6 million of revenue recognized during the first quarter of 2019 under the original Janssen License and Collaboration agreement. For the six months ended June 30, 2018, the Company recognized \$22.5 million of license and collaboration revenue.

The following tables present changes in the Company's contract assets and liabilities during the periods presented (in thousands):

<b>Six Months Ended June 30, 2019</b>	<b>Balance at Beginning of Period</b>	<b>Additions</b>	<b>Deductions</b>	<b>Balance at End of Period</b>
<b>Contract assets:</b>				
Receivable from collaboration partner - related party	\$ 2,042	\$ 29,881	\$ (27,034)	\$ 4,889
Contract asset - related party	\$ 2,545	\$ —	\$ (2,545)	\$ —
<b>Contract liabilities:</b>				
Deferred revenue - related party	\$ 8,223	\$ 34,526	\$ (1,182)	\$ 41,567
Payable to collaboration partner - related party	\$ 1,061	\$ 625	\$ (876)	\$ 810

<b>Six Months Ended June 30, 2018</b>	<b>Balance at Beginning of Period</b>	<b>Additions</b>	<b>Deductions</b>	<b>Balance at End of Period</b>
<b>Contract assets:</b>				
Receivable from collaboration partner - related party	\$ 1,816	\$ 4,627	\$ (658)	\$ 5,785
<b>Contract liabilities:</b>				
Deferred revenue - related party	\$ 31,752	\$ 3,451	\$ (22,001)	\$ 13,202
Payable to collaboration partner - related party	\$ —	\$ 580	\$ (304)	\$ 276

During the three and six months ended June 30 2019, the Company recognized revenue of \$1.6 million from amounts included in the deferred revenue contract liability balance at the beginning of the period. During the three and six months ended June 30, 2018, the Company recognized revenue of \$11.5 million and \$22.0 million, respectively, from amounts included in the contract liability balance at the beginning of the period. None of the costs to obtain or fulfill the contract were capitalized.

#### **Note 4. Fair Value Measurements**

Financial assets and liabilities are recorded at fair value. The accounting guidance for fair value provides a framework for measuring fair value, clarifies the definition of fair value and expands disclosures regarding fair value measurements. Fair value is defined as the price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability (an exit price) in an orderly transaction between market participants at the reporting date. The accounting guidance establishes a three-tiered hierarchy, which prioritizes the inputs used in the valuation methodologies in measuring fair value as follows:

*Level 1*—Inputs are unadjusted quoted prices in active markets for identical assets or liabilities at the measurement date.

*Level 2*—Inputs (other than quoted market prices included in Level 1) are either directly or indirectly observable for the asset or liability through correlation with market data at the measurement date and for the duration of the instrument's anticipated life.

[Table of Contents](#)

*Level 3* —Inputs reflect management’s best estimate of what market participants would use in pricing the asset or liability at the measurement date. Consideration is given to the risk inherent in the valuation technique and the risk inherent in the inputs to the model.

In determining fair value, the Company utilizes quoted market prices, broker or dealer quotations, or valuation techniques that maximize the use of observable inputs and minimize the use of unobservable inputs to the extent possible and considers counterparty credit risk in its assessment of fair value.

The following table presents the fair value of the Company’s financial assets determined using the inputs defined above (in thousands).

	June 30, 2019			
	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Total
<b>Assets:</b>				
Money market funds	\$ 38,877	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 38,877
Corporate bonds	—	12,578	—	12,578
Commercial paper	—	36,563	—	36,563
Government bonds	—	33,150	—	33,150
Total financial assets	\$ 38,877	\$ 82,291	\$ —	\$ 121,168

	December 31, 2018			
	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Total
<b>Assets:</b>				
Money market funds	\$ 25,390	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 25,390
Corporate bonds	—	8,989	—	8,989
Commercial paper	—	59,730	—	59,730
Government bonds	—	33,394	—	33,394
Total financial assets	\$ 25,390	\$ 102,113	\$ —	\$ 127,503

The Company’s corporate bonds, commercial paper and government bonds are classified as Level 2 as they were valued based upon quoted market prices for similar instruments in active markets, quoted prices for identical or similar instruments in markets that are not active and model-based valuation techniques for which all significant inputs are observable in the market or can be corroborated by observable market data for substantially the full term of the assets.

**Note 5. Balance Sheet Components**

***Cash Equivalents and Available-for-sale Securities***

Cash equivalents and available-for-sale securities consisted of the following (in thousands):

	June 30, 2019			
	Amortized Cost	Gross Unrealized		Fair Value
		Gains	Losses	
Money market funds	\$ 38,876	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 38,876
Corporate bonds	12,567	12	(1)	12,578
Commercial paper	36,565	3	(4)	36,564
Government bonds	33,126	24	—	33,150
Total cash equivalents and available-for-sale securities	\$ 121,134	\$ 39	\$ (5)	\$ 121,168
Classified as:				
Cash equivalents				\$ 66,210
Available-for-sale securities				54,958
Total cash equivalents and available-for-sale securities				\$ 121,168

	Amortized Cost	December 31, 2018		Fair Value
		Gains	Losses	
Money market funds	\$ 25,390	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 25,390
Corporate bonds	8,997	—	(8)	8,989
Commercial paper	59,730	—	—	59,730
Government bonds	33,423	—	(29)	33,394
Total cash equivalents and available-for-sale securities	\$ 127,540	\$ —	\$ (37)	\$ 127,503
Classified as:				
Cash equivalents				\$ 80,883
Available-for-sale securities				46,620
Total cash equivalents and available-for-sale securities				\$ 127,503

Available-for-sale securities - current held as of June 30, 2019 and December 31, 2018 had contractual maturities of less than one year. There were no material realized gains or realized losses on available-for-sale securities for the periods presented. The Company has not experienced any material credit losses on its investments.

### ***Property and Equipment, Net***

Property and equipment, net consisted of the following (in thousands):

	June 30, 2019	December 31, 2018
Laboratory equipment	\$ 2,869	\$ 2,533
Furniture and computer equipment	467	338
Leasehold improvements	739	67
Total property and equipment	4,075	2,938
Less: accumulated depreciation and amortization	(2,383)	(2,077)
Property and equipment, net	\$ 1,692	\$ 861

### ***Accrued Expenses and Other Payables***

Accrued expenses and other payables consisted of the following (in thousands):

	June 30, 2019	December 31, 2018
Accrued clinical and research related expenses	\$ 6,593	\$ 7,781
Accrued employee related expenses	2,460	2,726
Accrued research and development tax incentive payable	1,241	—
Accrued professional service fees	529	61
Other	22	595
Total accrued expenses and other payables	\$ 10,845	\$ 11,163

### **Note 6. Research Collaboration and License Agreement**

In October 2013, the Company's former collaboration partner decided to abandon a collaboration program with the Company and, pursuant to the terms of the agreement between the Company and the former collaboration partner, the Company elected to assume the responsibility for the development and commercialization of the product. Upon the former collaboration partner's abandonment, it assigned to the Company certain intellectual property that relates to the products arising from the collaboration. Milestone payments to collaboration partners are recorded as research and development expenses in the period that the expense is incurred. The Company did not accrue any payments due to former collaboration partners for research and development expenses during the three and six months ended June 30, 2019 and 2018.

## Note 7. Government Programs

### *Research and Development Tax Incentive*

The Company recognized AUD 2.4 million (\$1.7 million) and AUD 1.8 million (\$1.2 million) of research and development expenses for the three and six months ended June 30, 2019, respectively, in connection with a reversal of previously recorded reductions to research and development expenses in connection with the tax incentive from Australia. The Company determined that it had exceeded the annual turnover limit to claim such amounts following the receipt of certain payments under the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement. The Company recognized AUD 463,000 (\$359,000) and AUD 1.2 million (\$964,000) as a reduction of research and development expenses for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018, respectively, in connection with the research and development tax incentive from Australia. As of June 30, 2019 and December 31, 2018, the research and development tax incentive receivable was AUD 2.0 million (\$1.4 million).

### *Small Business Innovation Research ("SBIR") Grants*

The Company has received SBIR grants from the National Institutes of Health ("NIH") in support of research aimed at its product candidates. The Company recognizes a reduction to research and development expenses when expenses related to the grants have been incurred and the grant funds become contractually due from NIH. The Company recorded \$358,000 and \$546,000 as a reduction of research and development expenses for the three and six months ended June 30, 2019, respectively. The Company recorded \$64,000 and \$125,000 as a reduction of research and development expenses for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018, respectively. The Company recorded a receivable for \$358,000 and \$309,000 as of June 30, 2019 and December 31, 2018, respectively, to reflect the eligible costs incurred under the grants that are contractually due to the Company, and such amounts are included in prepaid expenses and other current assets on the condensed consolidated balance sheets.

## Note 8. Leases

On January 1, 2019, the Company adopted ASC 842, which requires entities to recognize assets and liabilities for leases with lease terms of more than 12 months on the balance sheet. Adoption of ASC 842 resulted in the recording of operating lease assets of \$7.5 million and operating lease liabilities of \$8.3 million. The impact of the changes made to the consolidated balance sheet as of January 1, 2019 as a result of adopting the new guidance was as follows (in thousands):

	Balance at December 31, 2018	Adjustments Due to ASC 842	Balance at January 1, 2019
<b>Balance Sheet:</b>			
Operating lease right-of-use asset - noncurrent	\$ —	7,499	\$ 7,499
Operating lease liability - current	\$ —	1,080	\$ 1,080
Operating lease liability - noncurrent	\$ —	7,219	\$ 7,219
Deferred rent - noncurrent	\$ 799	(799)	\$ —

The Company has one operating lease agreement entered into in March 2017 for laboratory and office space located in Newark, California. The Company provided the landlord with a \$450,000 letter of credit collateralized by restricted cash as security deposit for the lease, which expires in May 2024. In March 2019, the Company recorded a receivable from the landlord of \$469,000 related to eligible leasehold improvements made to the leased property, which the Company received in July 2019. Leases with terms of 12 months or less are not recorded on the balance sheet, as the related lease expenses are recognized on a straight-line basis over the lease term. During the three and six months ended June 30, 2019, the Company recognized \$21,000 of sublease income.

[Table of Contents](#)

The weighted average lease term and discount rate are as follows:

	<b>June 30, 2019</b>
<b>Operating Lease Term and Discount Rate:</b>	
Weighted-average remaining lease term	4.9 years
Weighted-average discount rate	11.0%

The following table summarizes the Company's minimum lease payments and lease liability as of June 30, 2019 (in thousands):

<b>Year Ending December 31:</b>	<b>Amount</b>
2019 (remaining six months)	\$ 954
2020	1,941
2021	2,000
2022	2,059
2023	2,121
Thereafter	895
Total future minimum lease payments	9,970
Less: imputed interest	(2,190)
Present value of future minimum lease payments	7,780
Less: current portion of operating lease liability	(1,164)
Operating lease liability - noncurrent	\$ 6,616

As previously disclosed in the Company's 2018 Annual Report on Form 10-K and under the previous lease accounting standard, future minimum lease payments for operating leases having initial or remaining noncancellable lease terms in excess of one year would have been as follows (in thousands):

<b>Year Ending December 31:</b>	<b>Amount</b>
2019	\$ 1,941
2020	2,000
2021	2,059
2022	2,121
2023	2,185
Thereafter	922
Total	\$ 11,228

Supplemental lease cost information is as follows (in thousands):

	<b>Three Months Ended June 30, 2019</b>	<b>Six Months Ended June 30, 2019</b>
Operating lease cost	\$ 444	\$ 903

Supplemental balance sheet information is as follows (in thousands):

	<b>June 30, 2019</b>
<b>Operating Leases:</b>	
Operating lease right-of-use asset - non-current	\$ 6,539
Operating lease liability - current	\$ 1,164
Operating lease liability - noncurrent	6,616
Total operating lease liabilities	\$ 7,780

Supplemental cash flow information is as follows (in thousands):

	Six Months Ended June 30, 2019
<b>Cash paid for amounts included in the measurement of lease liabilities:</b>	
Operating cash flow from operating leases	\$ 931

## Note 9. Stockholders' Equity

In September 2017, the Company filed a registration statement on Form S-3 with the Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") (File No. 333-220314), effective as of October 5, 2017, as amended, which permits the offering, issuance, and sale by the Company of up to a maximum aggregate offering price of \$200.0 million of its common stock. Up to a maximum of \$50.0 million of the maximum aggregate offering price of \$200.0 million may be issued and sold pursuant to an at-the-market ("ATM") financing facility under a sales agreement (the "Sales Agreement"). The Company sold 921,684 shares of its common stock pursuant to the Sales Agreement during the three and six months ended June 30, 2019 for net proceeds of \$10.5 million, after deducting issuance costs. There were no sales of the Company's common stock pursuant to the Sales Agreement during the three and six months ended June 30, 2018. As of June 30, 2019, a total of \$96.5 million of common stock remained available for sale under the registration statement on Form S-3, \$37.5 million of which remained available for sale under the ATM financing facility.

On August 6, 2018, the Company entered into a Securities Purchase Agreement with certain accredited investors (each, an "Investor" and, collectively, the "Investors"), pursuant to which the Company sold an aggregate of 2,750,000 shares of its common stock at a price of \$8.00 per share, for aggregate net proceeds of \$21.7 million, after deducting offering expenses payable by the Company. In a concurrent private placement, the Company issued the Investors warrants to purchase an aggregate of 2,750,000 shares of its common stock (each, a "Warrant," and collectively, the "Warrants"). Each Warrant is exercisable from August 8, 2018 through August 8, 2023. Warrants to purchase 1,375,000 shares of the Company's common stock have an exercise price of \$10.00 per share and Warrants to purchase 1,375,000 shares of the Company's common stock have an exercise price of \$15.00 per share. The exercise price and number of shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of the Warrants (the "Warrant Shares") are subject to adjustment in the event of any stock dividends and splits, reverse stock split, recapitalization, reorganization or similar transaction, as described in the Warrants. Under certain circumstances, the warrants may be exercisable on a "cashless" basis. In connection with the issuance and sale of the common stock and Warrants, the Company granted the Investors certain registration rights with respect to the Warrants and the Warrant Shares. The common stock and warrants are classified as equity in accordance with Accounting Standards Codification Topic 480, *Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity*, and the net proceeds from the transaction were recorded as a credit to additional paid-in capital. As of June 30, 2019, none of the warrants have been exercised.

On December 21, 2018, the Company entered into an exchange agreement (the "Exchange Agreement") with an Investor and its affiliates (the "Exchanging Stockholders"), pursuant to which the Company exchanged an aggregate of 1,000,000 shares of the Company's common stock, par value \$0.00001 per share, owned by the Exchanging Stockholders for pre-funded warrants (the "Exchange Warrants") to purchase an aggregate of 1,000,000 shares of common stock (subject to adjustment in the event of any stock dividends and splits, reverse stock split, recapitalization, reorganization or similar transaction, as described in the Exchange Warrants), with an exercise price of \$0.00001 per share. The Exchange Warrants will expire ten years from the date of issuance. The Exchange Warrants are exercisable at any time prior to expiration except that the Exchange Warrants cannot be exercised by the Exchanging Stockholders if, after giving effect thereto, the Exchanging Stockholders would beneficially own more than 9.99% of the Company's common stock, subject to certain exceptions. In accordance with Accounting Standards Codification Topic 505, *Equity*, the Company recorded the retirement of the common stock exchanged as a reduction of common shares outstanding and a corresponding debit to additional paid-in-capital at the fair value of the Exchange Warrants on the issuance date. The Exchange Warrants are classified as equity in accordance with Accounting Standards Codification Topic 480, *Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity*, and fair value of the Exchange Warrants was recorded as a credit to additional paid-in capital and is not subject to remeasurement. The Company determined that the fair value of the Exchange Warrants is substantially similar to the fair value of the retired shares on the issuance date due to the negligible exercise

price for the Exchange Warrants. As of June 30, 2019, Exchange Warrants to purchase 600,000 shares of common stock were net exercised, resulting in the issuance of 599,997 shares of common stock.

## Note 10. Equity Plans

### *Equity Incentive Plans*

In July 2016, the Company's board of directors and stockholders approved the Company's 2016 Equity Incentive Plan (the "2016 Plan") to replace the 2007 Stock Option Plan. The 2016 Plan is administered by the board of directors or a committee appointed by the board of directors, which determines the types of awards to be granted, including the number of shares subject to the awards, the exercise price and the vesting schedule. Awards granted under the 2016 Plan expire no later than ten years from the date of grant. As of June 30, 2019, approximately 522,856 shares were available for issuance under the 2016 Plan.

### *Inducement Plan*

In May 2018, the Company's board of directors approved the 2018 Inducement Plan, a non-stockholder approved stock plan, under which it reserved and authorized up to 750,000 shares of the Company's common stock in order to award options and restricted stock unit awards to persons that were not previously employees or directors of the Company, or following a bona fide period of non-employment, as an inducement material to such persons entering into employment with the Company, within the meaning of Rule 5635(c)(4) of the NASDAQ Listing Rules. The 2018 Inducement Plan is administered by the board of directors or the Compensation Committee of the board, which determines the types of awards to be granted, including the number of shares subject to the awards, the exercise price and the vesting schedule. Awards granted under the 2018 Inducement Plan expire no later than ten years from the date of grant. As of June 30, 2019, approximately 460,000 shares were available for issuance under the 2018 Inducement Plan.

### *Stock Options*

Stock options generally have an exercise price equal to the fair market value of the Company's common stock on the grant date. Employee stock options generally vest over a period of four years. Employee stock option incentive awards granted in 2018 vest in three equal installments at six-month intervals over a period of 18 months. Non-employee director initial stock options generally vest over a period of three years, and non-employee director annual refresher stock options generally vest over a period of approximately one year. Non-employee consultant options generally vest over a period of one to four years.

Stock option activity under the Company's equity incentive and inducement plans is set forth below:

	<b>Options Outstanding</b>	<b>Weighted- Average Exercise Price Per Share</b>	<b>Weighted- Average Remaining Contractual Life (years)</b>	<b>Aggregate Intrinsic Value (1) (in millions)</b>
<b>Balances at December 31, 2018</b>	3,178,441	\$ 12.23	7.52	
Options granted	1,067,300	8.75		
Options exercised	(95,627)	1.59		
Options forfeited	(369,669)	12.27		
<b>Balances at June 30, 2019</b>	<b>3,780,445</b>	<b>\$ 11.51</b>	<b>7.54</b>	<b>\$ 12.3</b>
Options exercisable – June 30, 2019	1,802,359	\$ 11.57	6.16	\$ 7.4
Options vested and expected to vest – June 30, 2019	3,780,445	\$ 11.51	7.54	\$ 12.3



- (1) The aggregate intrinsic values were calculated as the difference between the exercise price of the options and the closing price of the Company's common stock on June 30, 2019. The calculation excludes options with an exercise price higher than the closing price of the Company's common stock on June 30, 2019.

During the six months ended June 30, 2019, the estimated weighted-average grant-date fair value of common stock underlying options granted to employees was \$5.13 per share.

### ***Stock Options Valuation***

The fair value of employee stock option awards was estimated at the date of grant using a Black-Scholes option-pricing model with the following assumptions:

	Three Months Ended June 30,		Six Months Ended June 30,	
	2019	2018	2019	2018
Expected term (in years)	5.50 - 6.08	5.50 - 6.08	5.50 - 6.08	5.50 - 6.08
Expected volatility	62.0 - 62.7%	64.0 - 66.4%	62.0 - 62.7%	64.0 - 66.4%
Risk-free interest rate	1.88 - 2.20%	2.65 - 2.98%	1.88 - 2.58%	2.42 - 2.98%
Dividend yield	—	—	—	—

### ***Restricted Stock Units***

A restricted stock unit is an agreement to issue shares of the Company's common stock at the time of vesting. Restricted stock unit annual refresher awards vest in four equal installments on approximately the first, second, third and fourth anniversaries of the grant date. Restricted stock unit incentive awards granted in 2018 vest in three equal installments at six-month intervals over a period of 18 months.

Restricted stock unit activity under the Company's equity incentive plans is set forth below:

	Number of Shares	Weighted- Average Grant Date Fair Value
<b>Unvested at December 31, 2018</b>	418,450	\$ 10.45
Restricted stock units granted	160,650	8.02
Restricted stock units vested	(119,353)	10.04
Restricted stock units forfeited	(91,176)	9.79
<b>Unvested at June 30, 2019</b>	368,571	\$ 9.68

### ***Employee Stock Purchase Plan***

The 2016 Employee Stock Purchase Plan ("2016 ESPP") allows eligible employees to purchase shares of the Company's common stock at a discount through payroll deductions of up to 15% of their eligible compensation. At the end of each offering period, eligible employees are able to purchase shares at 85% of the lower of the fair market value of the Company's common stock at the beginning of the offering period or at the end of each applicable purchase period. As of June 30, 2019, a total of 146,673 shares of common stock have been issued under the 2016 ESPP, and 613,304 shares were available for issuance.

### Stock-Based Compensation

Total stock-based compensation expense was as follows (in thousands):

	Three Months Ended June 30,		Six Months Ended June 30,	
	2019	2018	2019	2018
Research and development	\$ 977	\$ 837	\$ 2,100	\$ 1,378
General and administrative	1,036	808	1,892	1,452
Total stock-based compensation expense	\$ 2,013	\$ 1,645	\$ 3,992	\$ 2,830

As of June 30, 2019, total unrecognized stock-based compensation expense was approximately \$16.2 million, which the Company expects to recognize over a weighted-average period of approximately 2.6 years.

### Note 11. Income Taxes

The Company recorded income tax benefit of \$1.6 million and \$1.4 million for the three and six months ended June 30, 2019, respectively, representing an effective income tax rate of 5.3% and 3.2%, respectively. Income tax benefit for the three and six months ended June 30, 2019 included a discrete tax benefit of approximately \$1.1 million for the 2017 Australia refundable R&D tax offset. The Company's effective income tax rate for the three and six months ended June 30, 2019 differs from the Company's federal statutory rate of 21%, primarily because its U.S. loss cannot be benefited due to the full valuation allowance position and reduced by foreign taxes. No income tax expense or benefit was recorded for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018.

### Note 12. Net Loss per Share

As the Company had net losses for the three and six months ended June 30, 2019 and 2018, all potential common shares were determined to be anti-dilutive. The following table sets forth the computation of basic and diluted net loss per share (in thousands, except share and per share data):

	Three Months Ended June 30,		Six Months Ended June 30,	
	2019	2018	2019	2018
Numerator:				
Net loss	\$ (29,174)	\$ (8,663)	\$ (43,277)	\$ (16,324)
Denominator:				
Weighted-average shares used to compute net loss per common share, basic and diluted	24,662,779	21,207,234	24,481,186	21,160,076
Net loss per shares, basic and diluted	\$ (1.18)	\$ (0.41)	\$ (1.77)	\$ (0.77)

The following outstanding shares of potentially dilutive securities have been excluded from diluted net loss per share computations for the periods presented because their inclusion would be anti-dilutive:

	June 30,	
	2019	2018
Options to purchase common stock	3,780,445	3,071,618
Common stock warrants	2,750,000	—
Restricted stock units	368,571	113,625
ESPP shares	36,999	19,417
Total	6,936,015	3,204,660

**Note 13. Subsequent Event**

The Company sold 1.2 million shares of its common stock pursuant to the Sales Agreement during the period from July 1, 2019 through July 31, 2019 for net proceeds of \$15.0 million, after deducting issuance costs. As of July 31, 2019, a total of \$81.1 million of common stock remained available for sale under the registration statement on Form S-3, \$22.1 million of which remained available for sale under the ATM financing facility.

## ITEM 2. MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

*You should read the following discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of operations together with our Unaudited Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements and related notes included in Part I, Item 1 of this quarterly report (this "Quarterly Report") on Form 10-Q and with our Audited Consolidated Financial Statements and related notes thereto for the year ended December 31, 2018, included in our Annual Report on Form 10-K filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") on March 12, 2019.*


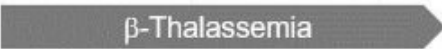

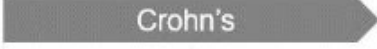


### Forward-Looking Statements

*This Quarterly Report contains certain forward-looking statements within the meaning of Section 27A of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, and Section 21E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "Exchange Act"). These statements involve known and unknown risks, uncertainties and other factors that may cause our actual results, performance or achievements to be materially different from any future results, performances or achievements expressed or implied by the forward-looking statements. In some cases, you can identify forward-looking statements by terms such as "anticipates," "believes," "could," "estimates," "expects," "intends," "may," "plans," "potential," "predicts," "projects," "should," "will," "would," and similar expressions intended to identify forward-looking statements. Forward-looking statements reflect our current views with respect to future events, are based on assumptions, and are subject to risks, uncertainties and other important factors. In particular, statements, whether expressed or implied, concerning, among other things, the potential for our programs, the timing of our clinical trials, the potential for eventual regulatory approval and commercialization of our product candidates and our potential receipt of milestone payments and royalties under our collaboration agreements, future operating results or the ability to generate sales, income or cash flow are forward-looking statements. They involve risks, uncertainties and assumptions that are beyond our ability to control or predict, including those discussed in Part II, Item 1A, of this Quarterly Report. While we believe such information forms a reasonable basis for such statements, such information may be limited or incomplete, and our statements should not be read to indicate that we have conducted an exhaustive inquiry into, or review of, all potentially available relevant information. Given these risks, uncertainties and other important factors, you should not place undue reliance on these forward-looking statements. Also, forward-looking statements represent our estimates and assumptions only as of the date of this Quarterly Report. Except as required by law, we assume no obligation to update any forward-looking statements publicly, or to update the reasons actual results could differ materially from those anticipated in any forward-looking statements, even if new information becomes available in the future. "Protagonist," the Protagonist logo and other trademarks, service marks and trade names of Protagonist are registered and unregistered marks of Protagonist Therapeutics, Inc. in the United States and other jurisdictions.*

### Overview

We are a clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company developing peptide-based product candidates to address significant unmet medical needs in hematology and gastroenterology.

## Our Product Pipeline

PROGRAM	DOSING FORM	PRECLINICAL	PHASE 1	PHASE 2	MILESTONES
<b>PTG-300</b> Hepcidin Mimetic for $\beta$ -Thalassemia, PV, HH & MDS	 Injectable (Sub-Q)	 <b><math>\beta</math>-Thalassemia</b>			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ph 2 initiated; preliminary results expected 4Q 2019</li> <li>PV indication initiation expected 3Q 2019</li> <li>Other indications (HH &amp; MDS) initiation in 2020</li> </ul>
<b>PTG-200</b> IL-23R Antagonist IBD (Crohn's) Partnered with <b>Janssen Biotech</b>	 Oral	 <b>Crohn's</b>			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ph 1 completed</li> <li>US IND filed and approved</li> <li>\$25 million payment received</li> <li>Ph2 initiation expected in 4Q 2019</li> </ul>
<b>PN-943</b> $\alpha 4\beta 7$ Antagonist IBD (UC)	 Oral	 <b>Ulcerative Colitis</b>			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ph 1 completed; Positive PD results reported in 2019</li> <li>Ph 2 UC trial initiation expected in early 2020</li> </ul>

In hematology, our most advanced clinical product candidate, PTG-300, is under development for the treatment of certain rare blood disorders characterized by ineffective erythropoiesis, excessive red blood cells or iron overload. PTG-300 is an injectable compound that mimics the effect of the natural hormone hepcidin, but with greater potency, solubility and stability. Hepcidin is a key hormone in regulating iron equilibrium and is critical to the proper development of red blood cells. We are currently developing PTG-300 for the treatment of ineffective erythropoiesis, chronic anemia and iron overload, with an initial focus on beta-thalassemia non-transfusion dependent and transfusion dependent patients where the primary endpoints are hemoglobin increases and transfusion burden reductions, respectively. PTG-300 has received an orphan drug designation from the U.S. Food and Drug Administration ("FDA") and European Union ("EU") regulatory authorities. The FDA has granted Fast Track designation to PTG-300 for the treatment of beta-thalassemia. In the first quarter of 2019, we began dosing patients in a global Phase 2 study of PTG-300 in beta-thalassemia. We expect to report preliminary results from this Phase 2 study in the fourth quarter of 2019 and top line results are expected in the first half of 2020. We plan to initiate a Phase 2 study in a polycythemia vera ("PV") in the third quarter of 2019. We are working toward the initiation of a both a clinical study of PTG-300 in the treatment of hereditary hemochromatosis ("HH") and an investigator-sponsored study of PTG-300 in patients with myelodysplastic syndromes ("MDS") in early 2020.

In gastroenterology our clinical stage product candidates, PTG-200 and PN-943, are potential first-in-class oral drugs currently in development for inflammatory bowel disease ("IBD"), a GI disease consisting primarily of ulcerative colitis ("UC") and Crohn's disease ("CD"), that block biological pathways currently targeted by marketed injectable antibody drugs. Our orally stable peptide approach offers targeted delivery to the gastrointestinal ("GI") tissue compartment. We believe that, compared to antibody drugs, these product candidates have the potential to provide improved safety due to minimal exposure in the blood, increased convenience and compliance due to oral delivery, and the opportunity for the earlier introduction of targeted therapy. As a result, if approved, they may transform the existing treatment paradigm for IBD.

PTG-200 is a potential first-in-class oral gut-restricted Interleukin-23 receptor (“IL-23R”) antagonist for the treatment of IBD. We have entered into a worldwide license and collaboration agreement with Janssen Biotech, Inc. (“Janssen”), a Johnson & Johnson company, to co-develop and co-detail PTG-200 and any second-generation compounds, for all indications, including IBD. The agreement was amended on May 7, 2019 to expand the collaboration, triggering a \$25 million payment from Janssen received during the second quarter of 2019. See Note 3 to the Consolidated Financial Statements included elsewhere in this Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for additional information. In 2018, we completed a Phase 1 clinical study to evaluate the safety, pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of PTG-200 in healthy volunteers. Janssen submitted a U.S. Investigational New Drug application (“IND”) for PTG-200 in CD during the second quarter of 2019, which was filed and approved in July 2019. We expect to initiate a Phase 2 clinical study in CD in the fourth quarter of 2019.

PN-943, a potential first-in-class oral, gut-restricted, alpha-4-beta-7 (“ $\alpha 4\beta 7$ ”) specific integrin antagonist, is currently in a Phase 1 single and multiple ascending dose clinical trial in healthy volunteers to evaluate safety, pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics. We developed PN-943 as a more potent oral gut-restricted  $\alpha 4\beta 7$  backup compound to PTG-100, our first-generation oral gut-restricted  $\alpha 4\beta 7$  inhibitor that was being developed for treatment of ulcerative colitis. In March 2018, we announced the discontinuation of a global Phase 2 clinical trial of PTG-100 in patients with moderate to severe UC due to futility following a planned interim analysis by an independent Data Monitoring Committee. In August 2018, we announced that a blinded re-read of endoscopies from the study by an independent contract research organization had demonstrated signals of clinical efficacy. A human error in the initial endoscopy reads by the original vendor which was characterized by an unusually high placebo effect led to the original futile outcome. In addition, a pre-specified blinded histopathology analysis of colon biopsies from the trial indicated dose-dependent high rates of histologic remission which supported the observations of clinical remission and endoscopy responses for PTG-100. During 2018 we replaced PTG-100 with PN-943 as a development candidate for the treatment of IBD based on an assessment of pre-clinical data from PN-943 suggesting that PN-943 is a more potent compound than PTG-100.

We reported results of the single ascending dose (“SAD”) part of the Phase 1 clinical study of PN-943 during the second quarter of 2019. We reported results from the multiple ascending dose (“MAD”) part of the Phase 1 clinical study of PN-943 in August 2019. The pharmacodynamic results indicated that the administration of PN-943 was safe and well tolerated, and results of target engagement were supportive of the higher potency of PN-943 as compared to PTG-100. We anticipate initiating a Phase 2 proof-of-concept study in UC in early 2020.

Our clinical development programs are all derived from our proprietary discovery platform. Our platform enables us to engineer novel, structurally constrained peptides that retain key advantages of both oral small molecules and injectable antibody drugs, while overcoming many of their limitations as therapeutic agents. Importantly, constrained peptides can be designed to alleviate the fundamental instability inherent in traditional peptides to allow different delivery forms, such as oral, subcutaneous, intravenous, and rectal. We continue to use our peptide technology platform to discover product candidates against targets in disease areas with significant unmet medical needs.

### ***Operations***

We have incurred net losses in each year since inception and we do not anticipate achieving sustained profitability in the foreseeable future. Our net losses were \$29.2 million and \$43.3 million for the three months and six months ended June 30, 2019, respectively, and \$8.7 million and \$16.3 million for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018, respectively. As of June 30, 2019, we had an accumulated deficit of \$183.8 million. Substantially all of our net losses have resulted from costs incurred in connection with our research and development programs and from general and administrative costs associated with our operations. We expect to continue to incur significant research, development and other expenses related to our ongoing operations and product development, including clinical development activities under the our worldwide license and collaboration agreement with Janssen, and, as a result, we expect to continue to incur losses in the future as we continue our development of, and seek regulatory approval for, our product candidates.

### ***Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement***

On May 26, 2017, we and Janssen, one of the Janssen Pharmaceutical Companies of Johnson & Johnson, entered into an exclusive license and collaboration agreement for the clinical development, manufacture and commercialization of PTG-200 worldwide for the treatment of CD and UC (the “Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement”), which was subsequently amended effective May 7, 2019. Janssen is a related party to us as Johnson & Johnson Innovation - JJDC, Inc., a significant stockholder of ours, and Janssen are both subsidiaries of Johnson & Johnson. During the third quarter of 2017, we received a non-refundable, upfront cash payment of \$50.0 million from Janssen. During the second quarter of 2019, we received a non-refundable cash payment of \$25.0 million due upon execution of the amendment. See Note 3 to the Condensed Consolidated Financial statements included elsewhere in this Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for additional information.

### **Critical Accounting Policies and Estimates**

Our management’s discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of operations is based on our unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements, which have been prepared in accordance with United States generally accepted accounting principles. The preparation of these unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements requires us to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and the disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements, as well as the reported revenue generated and expenses incurred during the reporting periods. Our estimates are based on our historical experience and on various other factors that we believe are reasonable under the circumstances, the results of which form the basis for making judgments about the carrying value of assets and liabilities that are not readily apparent from other sources. Actual results may differ from these estimates under different assumptions or conditions. In making estimates and judgments, management employs critical accounting policies.

#### ***Leases***

Effective January 1, 2019, we adopted Accounting Standards Codification Topic 842, *Leases* (“ASC 842”) using the modified retrospective approach and elected the package of transitional practical expedients, such that, for leases existing prior to the adoption of ASC 842, we will not need to reassess whether contracts are leases, will retain historical lease classification and historical initial direct costs classification. We did not elect the hindsight practical expedient to determine the lease term for existing leases. Under ASC 842, we determine if an arrangement is a lease at inception. Operating leases are included in operating lease right-of-use (“ROU”) assets, operating lease liabilities, and noncurrent operating lease liabilities on the consolidated balance sheets. Operating lease ROU assets and operating lease liabilities are recognized based on the present value of the future minimum lease payments over the lease term at commencement date. If our leases do not provide an implicit rate, we use an incremental borrowing rate based on the information available at commencement date in determining the present value of future payments. The operating lease ROU asset also includes any lease payments made and excludes lease incentives and initial direct costs incurred. Lease terms may include options to extend or terminate the lease when it is reasonably certain that we will exercise that option. Lease expense for minimum lease payments is recognized on a straight-line basis over the lease term. At the date of adoption of ASC 842, we derecognized our deferred rent liability in the amount of \$0.8 million and recognized a ROU asset and related lease liability in the amount of \$7.5 million and \$8.3 million, respectively.

There have been no other material changes in our critical accounting policies during the three and six months ended June 30, 2019, as compared to those disclosed in “*Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations—Critical Accounting Policies and Estimates*” in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2018 filed with the SEC on March 12, 2019.

## **Components of Our Results of Operations**

### ***License and Collaboration Revenue***

Our license and collaboration revenue is derived from payments we receive under the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement. See Note 3 to the Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements included elsewhere in this Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for additional information.

### ***Research and Development Expenses***

Research and development expenses represent costs incurred to conduct research, such as the discovery and development of our product candidates. We recognize all research and development costs as they are incurred, unless there is an alternative future use in other research and development projects or otherwise. Non-refundable advance payments for goods and services that will be used in future research and development activities are expensed when the activity has been performed or when the goods have been received rather than when payment has been made. In instances where we enter into agreements with third parties to provide research and development services to us, costs are expensed as services are performed. Amounts due under such arrangements may be either fixed fee or fee for service and may include upfront payments, monthly payments, and payments upon the completion of milestones or the receipt of deliverables.

Research and development expenses consist primarily of the following:

- expenses incurred under agreements with clinical study sites that conduct research and development activities on our behalf;
- employee-related expenses, which include salaries, benefits and stock-based compensation;
- laboratory vendor expenses related to the preparation and conduct of pre-clinical, non-clinical, and clinical studies;
- costs related to production of clinical supplies and non-clinical materials, including fees paid to contract manufacturers;
- license fees and milestone payments under license and collaboration agreements; and
- facilities and other allocated expenses, which include expenses for rent and maintenance of facilities, information technology, depreciation and amortization expense and other supplies.

We recognize the funds from grants under government programs as a reduction of research and development expenses when the related research costs are incurred. In addition, we recognize the funds related to our Australian research and development tax incentive that are not subject to refund provisions as a reduction of research and development expenses. The research and development tax incentives are recognized when there is reasonable assurance that the incentives will be received, the relevant expenditure has been incurred and the amount of the consideration can be reliably measured. We evaluate our eligibility under the tax incentive program as of each balance sheet date and make accruals and related adjustments based on the most current and relevant data available. We may alternatively be eligible for a taxable credit in the form of a non-cash tax incentive.

We allocate direct costs and indirect costs incurred to product candidates when they enter clinical development. For product candidates in clinical development, direct costs consist primarily of clinical, pre-clinical, and drug discovery costs, costs of supplying drug substance and drug product for use in clinical and pre-clinical studies, including clinical manufacturing costs, contract research organization fees, and other contracted services pertaining to specific clinical and pre-clinical studies. Indirect costs allocated to our product candidates on a program specific basis include research and development employee salaries, benefits, and stock-based compensation, and indirect overhead



and other administrative support costs. Program-specific costs are unallocated when the clinical expenses are incurred for our early stage research and drug discovery projects, our internal resources, employees and infrastructure are not tied to any one research or drug discovery project and are typically deployed across multiple projects. As such, we do not provide financial information regarding the costs incurred for early stage pre-clinical and drug discovery programs on a program-specific basis prior to the clinical development stage. During 2018, we elected to halt further development of PTG-100 and concurrently elected to replace further development of PTG-100 with PN-943 based on an assessment of pre-clinical data from PN-943. We continue to experience costs related to winding down the development and trials for PTG-100 in 2019. We initiated a Phase 1 study of PN-943 during the fourth quarter of 2018 and began presenting costs associated with PN-943 accordingly.

The following table summarizes our research and development expenses incurred during the periods indicated:

	Three Months Ended June 30,		Six Months Ended June 30,	
	2019	2018	2019	2018
	(In thousands)			
Clinical and development expense — PTG-300	\$ 8,063	\$ 3,074	\$ 13,816	\$ 5,657
Clinical and development expense — PN-943	6,032	—	10,240	—
Clinical and development expense — PTG-200	2,774	6,570	3,853	9,729
Clinical and development expense — PTG-100	280	5,333	935	14,437
Pre-clinical and drug discovery research expense	891	3,181	2,270	4,368
Grants and incentives reversals (reimbursement of expenses), net	1,315	(423)	685	(1,088)
Total research and development expenses	<u>\$ 19,355</u>	<u>\$ 17,735</u>	<u>\$ 31,799</u>	<u>\$ 33,103</u>

We expect our research and development expenses will increase as we progress our product candidates, including development activities under the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement, advance our discovery research projects into the pre-clinical stage and continue our early stage research. The process of conducting research, identifying potential product candidates and conducting pre-clinical and clinical trials necessary to obtain regulatory approval is costly and time intensive. We may never succeed in achieving marketing approval for our product candidates. The probability of success of our product candidates may be affected by numerous factors, including pre-clinical data, clinical data, competition, manufacturing capability and commercial viability. As a result, we are unable to determine the duration and completion costs of our research and development projects or when and to what extent we will generate revenue from the commercialization and sale of any of our product candidates. Our research and development programs are subject to change from time to time as we evaluate our priorities and available resources.

### ***General and Administrative Expenses***

General and administrative expenses consist of personnel costs, allocated facilities costs and other expenses for outside professional services, including legal, human resources, audit and accounting services. Personnel costs consist of salaries, benefits and stock-based compensation. Allocated expenses consist of expenses for rent and maintenance of facilities, information technology, depreciation and amortization expense and other supplies. We expect to continue to incur expenses to support our continued operations as a public company, including expenses related to existing and future compliance with rules and regulations of the SEC and those of the national securities exchange on which our securities are traded, insurance expenses, investor relations, professional services and general overhead and administrative costs.

### ***Interest Income***

Interest income consists of interest earned on our cash, cash equivalents and available-for-sale securities.

## Results of Operations

### Comparison of the Three Months Ended June 30, 2019 and 2018

	Three Months Ended June 30,		Dollar	%
	2019	2018	Change	Change
	(Dollars in thousands)			
License and collaboration revenue - related party	\$ (8,189)	11,674	\$ (19,863)	(170)
Operating expenses:				
Research and development <sup>(1)</sup>	19,355	17,735	1,620	9
General and administrative <sup>(2)</sup>	3,863	3,178	685	22
Total operating expenses	23,218	20,913	2,305	11
Loss from operations	(31,407)	(9,239)	(22,168)	240
Interest income	604	576	28	5
Loss before income tax benefit	(30,803)	(8,663)	(22,140)	256
Income tax benefit	1,629	—	1,629	100
Net loss	<u>\$ (29,174)</u>	<u>\$ (8,663)</u>	<u>\$ (20,511)</u>	237

(1) Includes \$1.0 million and \$0.8 million of non-cash stock-based compensation expense for the three months ended June 30, 2019 and 2018, respectively.

(2) Includes \$1.0 million and \$0.8 million of non-cash stock-based compensation expense for the three months ended June 30, 2019 and 2018, respectively.

### License and Collaboration Revenue

License and collaboration revenue decreased \$19.8 million, or 170%, from \$11.7 million for the three months ended June 30, 2018 to \$(8.2) million for the three months ended June 30, 2019. The decrease in license and collaboration revenue was primarily due to revenue reversal for a cumulative catchup adjustment related to a contract modification for the First Amendment to the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement effective May 7, 2019. The contract modification resulted in an increase in the transaction price and additional deliverables under the performance obligation, leading to an overall corresponding decrease in the cumulative in percentage of completion of our performance obligation for the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement.

We determined that the transaction price of the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement was \$108.5 million as of June 30, 2019, an increase of \$47.9 million from the transaction price of \$60.6 million at March 31, 2019. In order to determine the transaction price, we evaluated all payments to be received during the duration of the contract. We determined that the \$50.0 million upfront payment, the \$25.0 million payment payable upon execution of the First Amendment, \$13.4 million of cost reimbursement from Janssen for PTG-200 Phase 2 and other services, \$3.6 million of FTE reimbursement for second-generation compound research costs, and \$16.5 million of estimated variable consideration for milestone and cost-sharing payments from Janssen for agreed upon services related to second generation compounds as of June 30, 2019 constituted consideration to be included in the transaction price, which is to be allocated to the combined performance obligation. The increase in transaction price from March 31, 2019 to June 30, 2019 was due to an increase in fixed and variable consideration related to the contract modification for First Amendment to the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement effective May 7, 2019. We re-evaluate the transaction price each reporting period and as uncertain events are resolved or other changes in circumstances occur.

### Research and Development Expenses

Research and development expenses increased \$1.6 million, or 9%, from \$17.7 million for the three months ended June 30, 2018 to \$19.4 million for the three months ended June 30, 2019. The increase was primarily due to \$6.0 million of PN-943 clinical trial and development expenses, an increase of \$5.0 million in PTG-300 clinical trial and development expenses and a \$1.7 million reversal of previously recorded reductions to research and development

expenses in connection with the tax incentive from Australia, partially offset by a decrease of \$5.1 million in PTG-100 clinical trial and development expenses due to the halting of further development during 2018, a decrease of \$3.8 million for PTG-200 clinical trial and development expenses under the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement due to timing of deliverables and a decrease of \$2.3 million in pre-clinical and discovery research expenses.

### ***General and Administrative Expenses***

General and administrative expenses increased \$0.7 million, or 22%, from \$3.2 million for the three months ended June 30, 2018 to \$3.9 million for the three months ended June 30, 2019 due primarily to an increase of \$0.4 million in consulting and other professional services expenses and an increase of \$0.2 million in personnel costs to support the growth of our operations.

### ***Income Tax Benefit***

Income tax benefit was \$1.6 million for the three months ended June 30, 2019, representing an effective income tax rate of 5.3%. Income tax benefit for the three months ended June 30, 2019 included a discrete tax benefit of approximately \$1.1 million for the 2017 Australia refundable R&D tax offset. Our effective income tax rate for the three months ended June 30, 2019 differs from the our federal statutory rate of 21%, primarily because our U.S. loss cannot be benefited due to the full valuation allowance position and reduced by foreign taxes. No income tax expense or benefit was recorded for the three months ended June 30, 2019.

### ***Comparison of the Six Months Ended June 30, 2019 and 2018***

	Six Months Ended June 30,		Dollar	%
	2019	2018	Change	Change
	(Dollars in thousands)			
License and collaboration revenue - related party	\$ (6,629)	22,455	\$ (29,084)	(130)
Operating expenses:				
Research and development <sup>(1)</sup>	31,799	33,103	(1,304)	(4)
General and administrative <sup>(2)</sup>	7,627	6,820	807	12
Total operating expenses	39,426	39,923	(497)	(1)
Loss from operations	(46,055)	(17,468)	(28,587)	164
Interest income	1,333	1,144	189	17
Loss before income tax benefit	(44,722)	(16,324)	(28,398)	174
Income tax benefit	1,445	—	1,445	100
Net loss	\$ (43,277)	\$ (16,324)	\$ (26,953)	165

(1) Includes \$2.1 million and \$1.4 million of non-cash stock-based compensation expense for the six months ended June 30, 2019 and 2018, respectively.

(2) Includes \$1.9 million and \$1.4 million of non-cash stock-based compensation expense for the six months ended June 30, 2019 and 2018, respectively.

### ***License and Collaboration Revenue***

License and collaboration revenue decreased \$29.1 million, or 130%, from \$22.5 million for the six months ended June 30, 2018 to \$(6.6) million for the six months ended June 30, 2019. The decrease in license and collaboration revenue was primarily due to revenue reversal for a cumulative catchup adjustment related to a contract modification for the First Amendment to the Janssen Collaboration Agreement effective May 7, 2019. The contract modification resulted in an increase in the transaction price and additional deliverables under the performance obligation, leading to an overall corresponding decrease in the cumulative in percentage of completion of our performance obligation for the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement.

We determined that the transaction price of the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement was \$108.5 million as of June 30, 2019, an increase of \$47.8 million from the transaction price of \$60.7 million at December 31, 2018. In order to determine the transaction price, we evaluated all payments to be received during the duration of the contract. We determined that the \$50.0 million upfront payment, the \$25.0 million payment payable upon execution of the First Amendment, \$13.4 million of cost reimbursement from Janssen for PTG-200 Phase 2 and other services, \$3.6 million of FTE reimbursement for second-generation compound research costs, and \$16.5 million of estimated variable consideration for milestone and cost-sharing payments from Janssen for agreed upon services related to second generation compounds as of June 30, 2019 constituted consideration to be included in the transaction price, which is to be allocated to the combined performance obligation. The increase in transaction price from December 31, 2018 to June 30, 2019 was due to an increase in fixed and variable consideration related to the contract modification for First Amendment to the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement effective May 7, 2019. We re-evaluate the transaction price each reporting period and as uncertain events are resolved or other changes in circumstances occur.

### ***Research and Development Expenses***

Research and development expenses decreased \$1.3 million, or 4%, from \$33.1 million for the six months ended June 30, 2018 to \$31.8 million for the six months ended June 30, 2019. The decrease was primarily due to a decrease of \$13.5 million in PTG-100 clinical trial and development expenses due to the halting of further development during 2018, a decrease of \$5.9 million for PTG-200 clinical trial and development expenses under the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement due to timing of deliverables, a decrease of \$2.1 million in pre-clinical and discovery research expenses, and an increase of \$0.5 million in expense reimbursement from grants, partially offset by \$10.2 million of PN-943 clinical trial and development expenses, an increase of \$8.2 million in PTG-300 clinical trial and development expenses and a \$1.2 million reversal of previously recorded reductions to research and development expenses in connection with the tax incentive from Australia. Research and development expenses for the six months ended June 30, 2019 included an increase in salaries and employee-related primarily related to increased stock-based compensation expense.

### ***General and Administrative Expenses***

General and administrative expenses increased \$0.8 million, or 12%, from \$6.8 million for the six months ended June 30, 2018 to \$7.6 million for the six months ended June 30, 2019 due primarily to an increase of \$0.6 million in personnel costs to support the growth of our operations and an increase of \$0.2 million in consulting and other professional services expenses.

### ***Income Tax Benefit***

Income tax benefit was \$1.4 million for the six months ended June 30, 2019, representing an effective income tax rate of 3.2%. Income tax benefit for the six months ended June 30, 2019 included a discrete tax benefit of approximately \$1.1 million for the 2017 Australia refundable R&D tax offset. Our effective income tax rate for the six months ended June 30, 2019 differs from our federal statutory rate of 21%, primarily because our U.S. loss cannot be benefited due to the full valuation allowance position and reduced by foreign taxes. No income tax expense or benefit was recorded for the six months ended June 30, 2018.

### ***Liquidity and Capital Resources***

As of June 30, 2019, we had \$126.1 million of cash, cash equivalents and available-for-sale securities and an accumulated deficit of \$183.8 million. Our operations have primarily been financed by net proceeds from the sale of shares of our capital stock and payments under the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement. During the second quarter of 2019, we received a nonrefundable \$25.0 million payment from Janssen due upon execution of the May 7, 2019 amendment to the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement.

In September 2017, we filed a registration statement on Form S-3 with the Securities and Exchange Commission (“SEC”) (File No. 333-220314), effective as of October 5, 2017, as amended, which permits the offering, issuance, and sale by the Company of up to a maximum aggregate offering price of \$200.0 million of our common

stock. Up to a maximum of \$50.0 million of the maximum aggregate offering price of \$200.0 million may be issued and sold pursuant to an at-the-market (“ATM”) financing facility under a sales agreement (the “Sales Agreement”). We sold 921,684 shares of our common stock pursuant to the Sales Agreement during the three and six months ended June 30, 2019 for net proceeds of \$10.5 million, after deducting issuance costs. There were no sales of our common stock pursuant to the Sales Agreement during the three and six months ended June 30, 2018. As of June 30, 2019, a total of \$96.5 million of common stock remained available for sale under the registration statement on Form S-3, \$37.5 million of which remained available for sale under the ATM financing facility.

On August 6, 2018, we entered into a Securities Purchase Agreement with certain accredited investors (each, an “Investor” and, collectively, the “Investors”), pursuant to which we sold an aggregate of 2,750,000 shares of our common stock at a price of \$8.00 per share, for aggregate net proceeds of \$21.7 million, after deducting offering expenses payable by us. In a concurrent private placement, we issued the Investors Warrants to purchase an aggregate of 2,750,000 shares of our common stock (each, a “Warrant,” and collectively, the “Warrants”). Each Warrant is exercisable from August 8, 2018 through August 8, 2023. Warrants to purchase 1,375,000 shares of our common stock have an exercise price of \$10.00 per share and Warrants to purchase 1,375,000 shares of our common stock have an exercise price of \$15.00 per share. The exercise price and number of shares of common stock issuable upon the exercise of the Warrants (the “Warrant Shares”) are subject to adjustment in the event of any stock dividends and splits, reverse stock split, recapitalization, reorganization or similar transaction, as described in the Warrants. Under certain circumstances, the warrants may be exercisable on a “cashless” basis. In connection with the issuance and sale of the common stock and Warrants, we granted the Investors certain registration rights with respect to the Warrants and the Warrant Shares. As of June 30, 2019, none of the warrants have been exercised.

On December 21, 2018, we entered into an exchange agreement (the “Exchange Agreement”) with an Investor and its affiliates (the “Exchanging Stockholders”), pursuant to which we exchanged an aggregate of 1,000,000 shares of our common stock, par value \$0.00001 per share, owned by the Exchanging Stockholders for pre-funded warrants (the “Exchange Warrants”) to purchase an aggregate of 1,000,000 shares of common stock (subject to adjustment in the event of any stock dividends and splits, reverse stock split, recapitalization, reorganization or similar transaction, as described in the Exchange Warrants), with an exercise price of \$0.00001 per share. The Exchange Warrants will expire ten years from the date of issuance. The Exchange Warrants are exercisable at any time prior to expiration except that the Exchange Warrants cannot be exercised by the Exchanging Stockholders if, after giving effect thereto, the Exchanging Stockholders would beneficially own more than 9.99% of common stock, subject to certain exceptions. As of June 30, 2019, Exchange Warrants to purchase 600,000 of common stock were net exercised, resulting in the issuance of 599,997 shares of common stock.

Our primary uses of cash are to fund operating expenses, primarily research and development expenditures. Cash used to fund operating expenses is impacted by the timing of when we pay these expenses, as reflected in the change in our outstanding accounts payable and accrued expenses.

We believe, based on our current operating plan and expected expenditures, that our existing cash, cash equivalents and available-for-sale securities will be sufficient to meet our anticipated operating and capital expenditure requirements for at least the next 12 months from the date of this filing. We have based this estimate on assumptions that may prove to be wrong, and we could utilize our available capital resources sooner than we currently expect. If our planned pre-clinical and clinical trials are successful, or our other product candidates enter clinical trials or advance beyond the discovery stage, we will need to raise additional capital as well as seek additional collaborative or other arrangements with corporate sources in order to further advance our product candidates towards potential regulatory approval. We will continue to require additional financing to advance our current product candidates through clinical development, to develop, acquire or in-license other potential product candidates and to fund operations for the foreseeable future. We will continue to seek funds through equity or debt financings, collaborative or other arrangements with corporate sources, or through other sources of financing, but such financing may not be available at terms acceptable to us, if at all. We anticipate that we will need to raise substantial additional capital, the requirements of which will depend on many factors, including:

- the progress, timing, scope, results and costs of our pre-clinical studies and clinical trials for our product candidates, including the ability to enroll patients in a timely manner for our clinical trials;

## [Table of Contents](#)

- the costs of and ability to obtain clinical and commercial supplies and any other product candidates we may identify and develop;
- our ability to successfully commercialize the product candidates we may identify and develop;
- the selling and marketing costs associated with our current product candidates and any other product candidates we may identify and develop, including the cost and timing of expanding our sales and marketing capabilities;
- the achievement of development, regulatory and sales milestones resulting in payments to us from Janssen under the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement, and the timing of receipt of such payments, if any;
- the timing, receipt and amount of royalties under the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement on worldwide net sales of PTG-200, including any second-generation compounds, upon regulatory approval or clearance, if any;
- the amount and timing of sales and other revenues from our current product candidates and any other product candidates we may identify and develop, including the sales price and the availability of adequate third-party reimbursement;
- the cash requirements of any future acquisitions or discovery of product candidates;
- the time and cost necessary to respond to technological and market developments;
- the extent to which we may acquire or in-license other product candidates and technologies;
- costs necessary to attract, hire and retain qualified personnel;
- the costs of maintaining, expanding and protecting our intellectual property portfolio; and
- the costs of ongoing general and administrative activities to support the growth of our business.

Adequate additional funding may not be available to us on acceptable terms, or at all. Any failure to raise capital as and when needed could have a negative impact on our financial condition and on our ability to pursue our business plans and strategies. Further, our operating plans may change, and we may need additional funds to meet operational needs and capital requirements for clinical trials and other research and development activities. If we do raise additional capital through public or private equity offerings or convertible debt securities, the ownership interest of our existing stockholders will be diluted, and the terms of these securities may include liquidation or other preferences that adversely affect our stockholders' rights. If we raise additional capital through debt financing, we may be subject to covenants limiting or restricting our ability to take specific actions, such as incurring additional debt, making capital expenditures or declaring dividends. We currently have no credit facility and, with the exception of payments we may receive under the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement, we do not currently have any commitments for future external financing. Because of the numerous risks and uncertainties associated with the development and commercialization of our product candidates, we are unable to estimate the amounts of increased capital outlays and operating expenditures associated with our current and anticipated product development programs.

The following table summarizes our cash flows for the periods indicated (in thousands):

	Six Months Ended June 30,	
	2019	2018
	(In thousands)	
Cash used in operating activities	\$ (12,992)	\$ (30,536)
Cash used in investing activities	(9,117)	(12,253)
Cash provided by financing activities	11,020	604

### ***Cash Flows from Operating Activities***

Cash used in operating activities for the six months ended June 30, 2019 was \$13.0 million, consisting of our net loss of \$43.2 million, partially offset by a net change of \$26.7 million in net operating assets and non-cash charges of \$3.6 million. The change in net operating assets and liabilities was due primarily to a net increase of \$33.3 million in deferred revenue related to the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement, partially offset by a decrease of \$3.0 million in accounts payable, an increase of \$1.8 million in prepaid expenses and other current assets, a decrease of \$0.9 million in operating lease liability, an increase of \$0.3 million in receivable from collaboration partner, a decrease of \$0.3 million in accrued expenses and other payables, and a decrease of \$0.3 million in payable to collaboration partner. Non-cash charges were primarily comprised of \$4.0 million of stock-based compensation, \$0.9 million of operating lease ROU asset amortization and \$0.3 million of depreciation and amortization, partially offset by \$1.4 million of deferred tax benefit and \$0.2 million of net accretion of discount on available-for-sale securities.

Cash used in operating activities for the six months ended June 30, 2018 was \$30.5 million, consisting of our net loss of \$16.3 million and a net change of \$17.4 million in net operating assets, partially offset by non-cash charges of \$3.2 million. The change in net operating assets and liabilities was due primarily to a net decrease of \$18.6 million in deferred revenue related to the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement, an increase of \$4.0 million in receivable from collaboration partner and an increase of \$1.0 million in the Australia research and development tax incentive receivable, partially offset by an increase of \$4.0 million in accrued expenses and other payables, an increase of \$1.0 million in accounts payable, a decrease of \$0.8 million in prepaid expenses and an increase of \$0.3 million in payable to collaboration partner. Non-cash charges were primarily comprised of \$2.8 million of stock-based compensation, \$0.2 million of depreciation and amortization and \$0.1 million of net amortization of premium on available-for-sale securities.

### ***Cash Flows from Investing Activities***

Cash used in investing activities for the six months ended June 30, 2019 was \$9.1 million, consisting of purchases of available-for-sale securities of \$52.4 million and purchases of property and equipment of \$1.1 million, partially offset by proceeds from maturities of available for sale securities of \$44.4 million.

Cash used in investing activities for the six months ended June 30, 2018 was \$12.3 million, consisting of purchases of available-for-sale securities of \$39.0 million and purchases of property and equipment of \$0.3 million, partially offset by proceeds from maturities of available-for-sale securities of \$27.0 million.

### ***Cash Flows from Financing Activities***

Cash provided by financing activities for the six months ended June 30, 2019 was \$11.0 million, consisting of \$10.5 million of net proceeds from the sale of common stock under our ATM financing facility and \$0.5 million of proceeds from the issuance of common stock upon exercise of stock options and purchases of common stock under our employee stock purchase plan.

Cash provided by financing activities for the six months ended June 30, 2018 was \$0.6 million, consisting of proceeds from the issuance of common stock upon exercise of stock options and purchases of common stock under our employee stock purchase plan.



## **Contractual Obligations and Other Commitments**

During the three and six months ended June 30, 2019, there were no material changes to our contractual obligations and commitments described under *Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations* in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2018 filed with the SEC on March 12, 2019.

## **Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements**

We have not entered into any off-balance sheet arrangements, as defined under SEC rules, including the use of structured finance, special purpose entities or variable interest entities.

## **ITEM 3. QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE DISCLOSURES ABOUT MARKET RISK**

We are exposed to market risks in the ordinary course of our business. These risks primarily include interest rate sensitivities.

We had \$126.1 million and \$128.9 million in cash, cash equivalents and available-for-sale securities at June 30, 2019 and December 31, 2018, respectively. Cash and cash equivalents consist of cash, money market funds, commercial paper and government bonds. Available-for-sale securities consist of corporate bonds, commercial paper and government bonds. Short-term available-for-sale securities have maturities of greater than three months but no longer than 365 days as of the balance sheet date. Long-term available-for-sale securities have maturities of 365 days or longer as of the balance sheet date. A portion of our investments may be subject to interest rate risk and could fall in value if market interest rates increase. However, we believe that our exposure to interest rate risk is not significant as the majority of our investments are short-term in duration and due to the low risk profile of our investments, a 1% change in interest rates would not have a material impact on the total market value of our portfolio. We have the ability to hold our short-term investments until maturity, and therefore we do not expect that our results of operations or cash flows would be adversely affected by any change in market interest rates. We had no outstanding debt as of June 30, 2019.

Approximately \$1.2 million and \$0.4 million of our cash balance was located in Australia at June 30, 2019 and December 31, 2018, respectively. Our expenses, except those related to our Australian operations, are generally denominated in U.S. dollars. For our operations in Australia, the majority of the expenses are denominated in Australian dollars. To date, we have not had a formal hedging program with respect to foreign currency, but we may do so in the future if our exposure to foreign currency becomes more significant. A 10% increase or decrease in current exchange rates would not have a material effect on our results of operations.

## **ITEM 4. CONTROLS AND PROCEDURES**

### *Evaluation of Disclosure Controls and Procedures*

As required by Rule 13a-15(b) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "Exchange Act"), our management, under the supervision and with the participation of our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, evaluated the effectiveness of the design and operation of our disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e) under the Exchange Act) as of the end of the period covered by this Quarterly Report. Any controls and procedures, no matter how well designed and operated, can provide only reasonable assurance of achieving the desired control objective and management necessarily applies its judgment in evaluating the cost-benefit relationship of possible controls and procedures.

Based on the evaluation of our disclosure controls and procedures, our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer have concluded that, as of the end of the period covered by this Quarterly Report, our disclosure controls and procedures were effective at the reasonable assurance level.



*Changes in Internal Control over Financial Reporting*

There have been no changes in our internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the quarter ended June 30, 2019 that have materially affected, or are reasonably likely to materially affect, our internal control over financial reporting.

**PART II – OTHER INFORMATION**

**ITEM 1. LEGAL PROCEEDINGS**

From time to time, we may become subject to litigation and claims arising in the ordinary course of business. We are not currently a party to any material legal proceedings and we are not aware of any pending or threatened legal proceeding against us that we believe could have a material adverse effect on our business, operating results or financial condition.

**ITEM 1A. RISK FACTORS**

We have identified the following risks and uncertainties that may have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition or results of operations. Investors should carefully consider the risks described below before making an investment decision. Our business faces significant risks and the risks described below may not be the only risks we face. Additional risks not presently known to us or that we currently believe are immaterial may also significantly impair our business operations. If any of these risks occur, our business, results of operations or financial condition could suffer, the market price of our common stock could decline and you could lose all or part of your investment in our common stock.

**Risks Related to Clinical Development**

*We are an early clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company with no approved products and no historical product revenue, which makes it difficult to assess our future prospects and financial results.*

We are an early clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company with a limited operating history. Biopharmaceutical product development is a highly speculative undertaking and involves a substantial degree of uncertainty. Our operations to date have been limited to developing our technology, undertaking pre-clinical studies and early stage clinical trials of our pipeline candidates and conducting research to identify additional product candidates.

As an early clinical-stage company, we have not yet demonstrated an ability to generate product revenue or successfully overcome many of the risks and uncertainties frequently encountered by companies in new and rapidly evolving fields such as biopharmaceutical drug discovery and development. Consequently, the ability to accurately assess our future operating results or business prospects is significantly more limited than if we had a longer operating history or approved products on the market.

We expect that our financial condition and operating results will fluctuate significantly from period to period due to a variety of factors, many of which are beyond our control, including, but not limited to:

- the clinical outcomes from the continued development of our product candidates;
- potential side effects of our product candidates that could delay, prevent further development or approval or cause an approved drug to be taken off the market;
- our ability to obtain, as well as the timeliness of obtaining, additional funding to develop and potentially manufacture and commercialize our product candidates, including payments, if any, under the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement;

- competition from existing products directed against the same biological target or therapeutic indications of our product candidates as well as new products that may receive marketing approval;
- the entry of generic or biosimilar versions of products that compete with our product candidates;
- the timing of regulatory review and approval of our product candidates;
- market acceptance of our product candidates that receive regulatory approval, if any;
- our ability to establish an effective sales and marketing infrastructure directly or through collaborations with third parties;
- the ability of patients or healthcare providers to obtain coverage or sufficient reimbursement for our products;
- the ability of third party manufacturers to manufacture in accordance with current good manufacturing practices (“cGMP”) our product candidates, conduct clinical trials with good clinical practices (“GCP”) and, if approved, for successful commercialization;
- our ability as well as the ability of any third-party collaborators, to obtain, maintain and protect intellectual property rights covering our product candidates and technologies, and our ability to develop, manufacture and commercialize our product candidates without infringing on the intellectual property rights of others;
- our ability to add infrastructure and manage adequately our future growth;
- our ability to raise additional funds and/or enter into collaboration agreements to allow us to continue to fund our operations; and
- our ability to attract and retain key personnel with appropriate expertise and experience to manage our business effectively.

Accordingly, the likelihood of our success must be evaluated in light of many potential challenges and variables associated with an early clinical-stage biopharmaceutical company, many of which are outside of our control, and past results, including operating or financial results, should not be relied on as an indication of future results.

***We are heavily dependent on the success of our product candidates in early-stage clinical development, and if any of these products fail to receive regulatory approval or are not successfully commercialized, our business would be adversely affected.***

We currently have no product candidates that are in registrational or pivotal clinical trials or are approved for commercial sale, and we may never be able to develop a marketable product. We expect that a substantial portion of our efforts and expenditures over the next few years will be devoted to our current product candidates and the development of other product candidates. We cannot be certain that our product candidates will receive regulatory approval or, if approved, be successfully commercialized. The research, testing, manufacturing, labeling, approval, sale, marketing and distribution of our product candidates will remain subject to extensive regulation by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (“FDA”) and other regulatory authorities in the United States and other countries, each of which has differing regulations. In addition, even if approved, our pricing and reimbursement will be subject to further review and discussions with payors. We are not permitted to market any product candidate in the United States until after approval of a new drug application (“NDA”) from the FDA, or in any foreign countries until after approval of a marketing application by corresponding regulatory authorities. We will need to conduct larger, more extensive clinical trials in the target patient populations to support a potential application for regulatory approval by the FDA or corresponding regulatory authorities, and we do not expect to be in a position to do so for the near term. We may not receive any preferential or expedited review of any application for regulatory approval by virtue of the fact that our product

candidates target biological pathways that are also targeted by currently marketed injectable antibody drugs, and our product candidates will be subject to the regulatory review processes applicable to completely new drugs.

We have not previously submitted an NDA to the FDA, or similar drug approval filings to comparable foreign authorities, for any product candidate, and we cannot be certain that any of our product candidates will be successful in clinical trial or receive regulatory approval. Filing an application and obtaining regulatory approval for a pharmaceutical product candidate is an extensive, lengthy, expensive and inherently uncertain process, and the regulatory authorities may delay, limit or deny approval of our product candidates for many reasons, including:

- we may not be able to demonstrate that any of our product candidates are safe and effective to the satisfaction of the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities;
- the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may require additional pre-clinical studies or clinical trials prior to granting approval, which would increase our costs and extend the pre-approval development process;
- the results of our clinical trials may not meet the level of statistical or clinical significance required by the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities for approval;
- the FDA may disagree with the number, design, size, conduct or statistical analysis of one or more of our clinical trials;
- contract research organizations (“CROs”) that we retain to conduct clinical trials may take actions outside of our control that materially and adversely impact our clinical trials;
- the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may disagree with, or not accept, our interpretation of data from our pre-clinical studies and clinical trials;
- the FDA may require development of a costly and extensive risk evaluation and mitigation strategy (“REMS”), as a condition of approval;
- the FDA or other regulatory authorities may require post-marketing studies as a condition of approval;
- the FDA may identify deficiencies in our manufacturing processes or facilities or those of our third-party manufacturers which would be required to be corrected prior to regulatory approval;
- the success or further approval of competitor products approved in indications in which we undertake development of our product candidates may change the standard of care or change the standard for approval of our product candidate in our proposed indications; and
- the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may change their approval policies or adopt new regulations.

Our product candidates will require additional research, clinical development, manufacturing activities, regulatory approval in multiple jurisdictions (if regulatory approval can be obtained at all), securing sources of commercial manufacturing supply and building of or partnering with a commercial organization. We cannot assure you that our clinical trials for our product candidates will be initiated or completed in a timely manner or successfully, or at all. Further we cannot be certain that we plan to advance any other peptide-based product candidates into clinical trials. Moreover, any delay or setback in the development of any product candidate would be expected to adversely affect our business and cause our stock price to fall. For example, the announcement of the premature discontinuation of the global Phase 2 clinical trial of PTG-100 for the treatment of moderate-to-severe UC in March 2018 due to the interim analysis meeting futility criteria on the primary endpoint of clinical remission (that was subsequently confirmed to be due to human error in endoscopy reads by the original vendor) significantly depressed our stock price.

***Clinical development is a lengthy and expensive process with an uncertain outcome, and results of earlier studies and trials may not be predictive of future trial results. Clinical failure can occur at any stage of clinical development.***

Clinical testing is expensive and can take many years to complete, and its outcome is inherently uncertain. Failure can occur at any time during the clinical development process. The results of pre-clinical studies and early clinical trials of our product candidates and studies and trials of other products may not be predictive of the results of later-stage clinical trials. In addition to our planned pre-clinical studies and clinical trials, we expect to have to complete at least two large scale, well-controlled clinical trials to demonstrate substantial evidence of efficacy and safety for each product candidate we intend to commercialize. Further, given the patient populations for which we are developing therapeutics, we expect to have to evaluate long-term exposure to establish the safety of our therapeutics in a chronic dose setting. We initiated a Phase 2 clinical trial in PTG-100, which we prematurely discontinued, and have never conducted a Phase 3 clinical trial or submitted an NDA, and as a result, we have no history or track record to rely on when entering these phases of the development cycle. Product candidates in later stages of clinical trials may fail to show the desired safety and efficacy traits despite having progressed through pre-clinical studies and initial clinical trials. Clinical trial failures may result from a multitude of factors including, but not limited to, flaws in trial design, dose selection, placebo effect, patient enrollment criteria and failure to demonstrate favorable safety and/or efficacy traits of the product candidate. A number of companies in the biopharmaceutical industry have suffered significant setbacks in advanced clinical trials due to lack of efficacy or adverse safety profiles, notwithstanding promising results in earlier trials. Based upon negative or inconclusive results, we may decide, or regulators may require us, to conduct additional clinical trials or pre-clinical studies.

We may experience delays in ongoing clinical trials, and we do not know whether planned clinical trials will begin on time, need to be redesigned, enroll patients on time or be completed on schedule, if at all. Clinical trials can be delayed for a variety of reasons, including delays related to:

- obtaining regulatory approvals to commence a clinical trial;
- reaching agreement on acceptable terms with prospective CROs and clinical trial sites, the terms of which can be subject to extensive negotiation and may vary significantly among different CROs and trial sites;
- fraud or negligence on the part of CROs, contract manufacturing organizations (“CMOs”), consultants or contractors;
- obtaining institutional review board (“IRB”) or ethics committee (“EC”), approval at each site;
- recruiting suitable patients to participate in a clinical trial;
- having patients complete a clinical trial or return for post-treatment follow-up;
- clinical sites deviating from the clinical trial protocol or dropping out of a clinical trial;
- adding new clinical trial sites; or
- manufacturing sufficient quantities of product candidate for use in clinical trials.

We could encounter delays if a clinical trial is modified, suspended or terminated by us, by the IRBs or ECs of the institutions in which such clinical trials are being conducted, by a Data Safety Monitoring Board, for such trial or by the FDA or other regulatory authorities. Such authorities may impose a modification, suspension or termination due to a number of factors. If we experience delays in the completion of, or termination of, any clinical trial of our product candidates, the commercial prospects of our product candidates will be harmed and our ability to generate product revenue from any of these product candidates will be delayed. In addition, any delays in completing our clinical trials will increase our costs, slow down our product candidate development and approval process and jeopardize our ability to commence product sales and generate revenue. Any of these occurrences may harm our business, financial condition

and prospects significantly. In addition, many of the factors that cause, or lead to, a delay in the commencement or completion of clinical trials may also ultimately lead to the denial of regulatory approval of our product candidates.

In addition, data obtained from trials and studies are susceptible to varying interpretations, and regulators may not interpret our data as favorably as we do, which may delay, limit or prevent regulatory approval.

***Enrollment and retention of patients in clinical trials is an expensive and time-consuming process and could be made more difficult or rendered impossible by multiple factors outside our control.***

We may encounter delays in enrolling, be unable to enroll or maintain, a sufficient number of patients to complete any of our clinical trials. Patient enrollment and retention in clinical trials is a significant factor in the timing of clinical trials and depends on many factors, including the size and nature of the patient population, the nature of the trial protocol, the existing body of safety and efficacy data with respect to the study drug, the number and nature of competing treatments and ongoing clinical trials of competing drugs for the same indication, the proximity of patients to clinical trial sites and the eligibility criteria for the clinical trial. There are a significant number of global clinical trials in IBD and in hematologic disorders that are currently ongoing, especially in Phases 2 and 3, making it highly competitive and challenging to recruit subjects. More broadly, we are aware of a number of therapies that are commercialized or are being developed for IBD and in hematologic disorders and we expect to face competition from these investigational drugs or approved drugs for potential subjects in our clinical trials, which may delay the pace of enrollment in our planned clinical trials. Furthermore, any negative results we may report in clinical trials of our product candidates, such as the premature termination of our Phase 2 clinical trial of PTG-100 for the treatment of moderate-to-severe UC, may make it difficult or impossible to recruit and retain patients in other clinical trials of that same product candidate. Delays or failures in planned patient enrollment or retention may result in increased costs, program delays or both, which could have a harmful effect on our ability to develop our product candidates or could render further development impossible.

***All of our peptide-based product candidates other than PTG-300, PTG-200 and PN-943 are in research or pre-clinical development and have not entered into clinical trials. If we are unable to develop, test and commercialize our peptide-based product candidates, our business will be adversely affected.***

As part of our strategy, we seek to discover, develop and commercialize a portfolio of new peptide-based product candidates in addition to PTG-300, PTG-200, and PN-943. Research programs to identify appropriate biological targets pathways and product candidates require substantial scientific, technical, financial and human resources, whether or not any product candidates are ultimately identified. Our research programs may initially show promise in identifying potential product candidates, yet fail to yield product candidates for clinical development for many reasons.

***Our research and development strategy for our lead product candidates relies in large part on clinical data and results obtained from antibody and small molecule products that are approved or in late-stage development that could ultimately prove to be inaccurate or unreliable for use with our peptide-based product candidate approach.***

As part of our strategy to mitigate clinical development risk, we seek to develop peptide-based product candidates against validated biological targets and pathways that have been targeted by approved or later stage products in development. While we utilize pre-clinical *in vivo* and *in vitro* models as well as clinical biomarkers to assess potential safety and efficacy early in the candidate selection and development process, this strategy necessarily relies upon clinical data and other results obtained by third parties that may ultimately prove to be inaccurate or unreliable or otherwise not applicable to the indications in which we develop our peptide-based product candidates. We will have to conduct clinical trials to show the safety and efficacy of our peptide-based product candidates against the identified biological targets and pathways to show that our peptide-based product candidates can address the identified mechanism of action shown by these third party results. If our interpretation of the third party clinical data and results from molecules directed against the same biological target or pathway or our pre-clinical *in vivo* and *in vitro* models prove inaccurate or our assumptions and conclusions about the applicability of our peptide-based product candidates against the same biological targets or pathways are incorrect or inaccurate, then our development efforts may prove unsuccessful or longer and more extensive and our research and development strategy and business and operations could be significantly harmed.

***Our proprietary peptide platform may not result in any products of commercial value.***

We have developed a proprietary peptide technology platform to enable the identification, testing, design and development of new product candidates. We cannot assure you that our peptide platform will work, nor that any of these potential targets or other aspects of our proprietary drug discovery and design platform will yield product candidates that could enter clinical development and, ultimately, be commercially valuable. Although we expect to continue to enhance the capabilities of our proprietary platform by developing and integrating existing and new research technologies, we may not be successful in any of our enhancement and development efforts. For example, we may not be able to enter into agreements on suitable terms to obtain technologies required to develop certain capabilities of our peptide platform. In addition, we may not be successful in developing the conditions necessary to simulate specific tissue function from multiple species, or otherwise develop assays or cell cultures necessary to expand these capabilities. If our enhancement or development efforts are unsuccessful, we may not be able to advance our drug discovery capabilities as quickly as we expect or identify as many potential drug candidates as we desire.

***Our product candidates may cause undesirable side effects or have other properties impacting safety that could delay or prevent their regulatory approval, limit the commercial profile of an approved label, or result in limiting the commercial opportunity for our product candidates if approved.***

Undesirable side effects that may be caused by our product candidates or caused by similar approved drugs or product candidates in development by other companies, could cause us, an independent data monitoring committee or regulatory authorities to interrupt, delay or halt clinical trials and could result in a more restrictive label or the delay or denial of regulatory approval by the FDA or other comparable foreign authorities. Results of our clinical trials could reveal a high and unacceptable severity and prevalence of side effects or adverse events related to our product candidates. In such an event, our clinical trials could be suspended or terminated and the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities could order us to cease further development of our product candidates for any or all targeted indications. In addition, drug-related side effects could negatively affect patient recruitment or the ability of enrolled patients to complete the trial and even if our clinical trials are completed and our product candidate is approved, drug-related side effects could restrict the label or result in potential product liability claims. Any of these occurrences could significantly harm our business, financial condition and prospects significantly.

Moreover, since our product candidates PTG-200 and PN-943 have been developed for indications for which injectable antibody drugs have been approved, we expect that our clinical trials would need to show a risk/benefit profile that is competitive with those existing products and product candidates in order to obtain regulatory approval or, if approved, a product label that is favorable for commercialization.

Additionally, if one or more of our product candidates receives marketing approval and we or others later identify undesirable side effects caused by such products, a number of potentially significant negative consequences could result, including:

- regulatory authorities may withdraw approvals of such product;
- regulatory authorities may require additional warnings on the label;
- we may be required to create a medication guide outlining the risks of such side effects for distribution to patients;
- we could be sued and held liable for harm caused to patients; and
- our reputation may suffer.

Any of these events could prevent us from achieving or maintaining market acceptance of the particular peptide-based product candidate which could significantly harm our business and prospects.

***We have focused our limited resources to pursue particular product candidates and indications, and consequently, we may fail to capitalize on product candidates or indications that may be more profitable or for which there is a greater likelihood of success.***

Because we have limited financial and managerial resources, we have focused on research programs and product candidates mainly on the development of PTG-300 for treatment of certain rare blood disorders and the discovery and development of PTG-200, including any second-generation compounds, and PN-943, GI-restricted drugs that target the same biological pathways as currently marketed injectable antibody drugs for the treatment of IBD. As a result, we may forego or delay pursuit of opportunities with other product candidates or for other indications that later prove to have greater commercial potential. Our resource allocation decisions may cause us to fail to capitalize on viable commercial products or profitable market opportunities. Our spending on current and future research and development programs and product candidates for specific indications may not yield any commercially viable products. If we do not accurately evaluate the commercial potential or target market for a particular product candidate, we may relinquish valuable rights to that product candidate through collaboration partnerships, licensing or other royalty arrangements in cases in which it would have been more advantageous for us to retain sole development and commercialization rights to such product candidate.

#### **Risks Related to Our Financial Position and Capital Requirements**

***We have incurred significant losses since our inception and anticipate that we will continue to incur significant losses for the foreseeable future. We have never generated any revenue from product sales and may never be profitable.***

We have incurred significant operating losses since our inception. Our net loss was \$29.2 million and \$43.3 million for the three and six months ended June 30, 2019, respectively, and \$8.7 million and \$16.4 million for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018, respectively. As of June 30, 2019, we had an accumulated deficit of \$183.8 million. Our prior losses, combined with expected future losses, have had and will continue to have an adverse effect on our stockholders' equity and working capital. We expect to continue to incur significant research, development and other expenses related to our ongoing operations and product development, including clinical development activities under our exclusive license and collaboration agreement, as amended, (the "Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement") with Janssen Biotech, Inc., a Pennsylvania corporation ("Janssen"), and as a result, we expect to continue to incur losses in the future as we continue our development of, and seek regulatory approvals for, our peptide-based product candidates.

We do not anticipate generating revenue from sales of products for the foreseeable future, if ever, and we do not currently have any product candidates in registration or pivotal clinical trials. If any of our peptide-based product candidates fail in clinical trials or do not gain regulatory approval, or even if approved, fail to achieve market acceptance, we may never become profitable. Furthermore, any revenues generated from the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement may not be sufficient alone to sustain our operations as there can be no assurance that we will receive any opt-in election fees, development, regulatory, or sales milestone payments, or royalties from Janssen in the future pursuant to the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement. Even if we do achieve profitability, we may not be able to sustain or increase profitability on a quarterly or annual basis. Failure to become and remain profitable may adversely affect the market price of our common stock and our ability to raise capital and continue operations.

If one or more of our peptide-based product candidates is approved for commercial sale and we retain commercial rights, we anticipate incurring significant costs associated with manufacturing and commercializing such approved peptide-based product candidate. Therefore, even if we are able to generate revenue from the sale of any approved product, we may never become profitable.

***We will require substantial additional funding, which may not be available to us on acceptable terms, or at all.***

Our operations have consumed substantial amounts of cash since inception. Developing pharmaceutical product candidates, including conducting pre-clinical studies and clinical trials, is expensive. We will require substantial additional future capital in order to complete clinical development and, if we are successful, to commercialize any of



our current product candidates. If the FDA or any foreign regulatory agency, such as the European Medicines Agency (“EMA”), requires that we perform studies or trials in addition to those that we currently anticipate with respect to the development of any of our product candidates, or repeat studies or trials, our expenses would further increase beyond what we currently expect, and any delay resulting from such further or repeat studies or trials could also result in the need for additional financing.

Further, in the event our Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement is terminated, we may not receive any development fees, milestone payments, or royalties under the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement, and we would be required to fund all clinical development, manufacturing, and commercial activities for PTG-200 and any second-generation compounds, which would require us to raise additional capital or establish alternative collaborations with third-party collaboration partners, which may not be possible.

As of June 30, 2019, we had cash, cash equivalents and available-for-sale securities of \$126.1 million. Based upon our current operating plan and expected expenditures, we believe that our existing cash, cash equivalents, and available-for-sale securities will be sufficient to fund our operations for at least the next 12 months. Our existing capital resources will not be sufficient to enable us to initiate any pivotal clinical trials. Accordingly, we expect that we will need to raise substantial additional funds in the future in order to complete clinical development or commercialize any of our product candidates. Our funding requirements and the timing of our need for additional capital are subject to change based on a number of factors, including:

- the rate of progress and the cost of our studies of our product candidates;
- the number of product candidates that we intend to develop using our technology platform;
- the costs of research and pre-clinical studies to support the advancement of other product candidates into clinical development;
- the timing of, and costs involved in, seeking and obtaining approvals from the FDA and comparable foreign regulatory authorities, including the potential by the FDA or comparable regulatory authorities to require that we perform more studies than those that we currently expect;
- the achievement of development, regulatory, and sales milestones resulting in the payment to us from Janssen under the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement and the timing of receipt of such payments, if any;
- changes or delays in our and/or Janssen’s development plans for PTG-200 or any second-generation compounds;
- the costs of preparing to manufacture our product candidates on a scale sufficient to enable large-scale clinical trials and commercial supply;
- the timing and cost of transitioning our product formulations into the formulations we intend to use in registration trials and commercialize;
- the costs of commercialization activities if any current or future product candidate is approved, including the formation of a sales force;
- Janssen’s ability to successfully market and sell PTG-200 and any second-generation compounds upon regulatory approval and clearance, in the United States and other countries;
- the timing, receipt and amount of royalties under the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement on worldwide net sales of PTG-200 and any second-generation compounds upon regulatory approval and clearance, if any;



- the sales price and availability of coverage and adequate third-party reimbursement for our product candidates that may receive regulatory approval, if any;
- the degree and rate of market acceptance of any products launched by us or our partners;
- the costs of filing, prosecuting, defending and enforcing any patent claims and other intellectual property rights;
- our need and ability to hire and retain existing and additional personnel;
- our ability to enter into additional collaboration, licensing, commercialization or other arrangements and the terms and timing of such arrangements; and
- the emergence of competing technologies or other adverse market developments.

If our existing capital resources, future interest income, upfront payment and potential opt-in election fees, milestone payments, and royalties under the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement are insufficient to meet future capital requirements, and if we are unable to obtain additional funding from equity offerings or debt financings, including on a timely basis, we may be required to:

- seek collaborators for one or more of our peptide-based product candidates at an earlier stage than otherwise would be desirable or on terms that are less favorable than might otherwise be available;
- relinquish or license on unfavorable terms our rights to technologies or peptide-based product candidates that we otherwise would seek to develop or commercialize ourselves; or
- significantly curtail one or more of our research or development programs or cease operations altogether.

***Raising additional capital may cause dilution to our existing stockholders, restrict our operations or require us to relinquish rights to our peptide-based product candidates or technologies.***

We may seek additional funding through a combination of equity offerings, debt financings, collaborations and/or licensing arrangements. Additional funding may not be available to us on acceptable terms, or at all. The incurrence of indebtedness and/or the issuance of certain equity securities could result in fixed payment obligations and could also result in certain additional restrictive covenants, such as limitations on our ability to incur debt and/or issue additional equity, limitations on our ability to acquire or license intellectual property rights and other operating restrictions that could adversely impact our ability to conduct our business. In addition, the issuance of additional equity securities by us, or the possibility of such issuance, may cause the market price of our common stock to decline. In the event that we enter into collaborations and/or licensing arrangements in order to raise capital, we may be required to accept unfavorable terms, including relinquishing or licensing to a third party on unfavorable terms our rights to our proprietary technology platform or peptide-based product candidates that we otherwise would seek to develop or commercialize ourselves or potentially reserve for future potential arrangements when we might be able to achieve more favorable terms.

#### **Risks Related to Our Reliance on Third Parties**

***If Janssen does not elect to continue the development of PTG-200 or any second-generation compounds, our business and business prospects would be significantly harmed.***

Under the terms of the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement, Janssen may terminate the research program for second-generation compounds after an agreed upon period, and retains the right to terminate the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement for convenience and without cause on written notice of a certain period. In addition, Janssen will generally retain control over the further clinical development of PTG-200 and the clinical

development of second-generation compounds. Janssen's decisions with respect to such development will affect the timing and availability of potential future opt-in, milestone and royalty payments, if any. If the research program or the Janssen License and Collaboration agreement are terminated early, or if Janssen's development activities are terminated early or suspended for an extended period of time, or are otherwise unsuccessful, our business and business prospects would be materially adversely affected.

***If there are any safety or efficacy results that cause the benefit-risk profile of PTG-200 or any second-generation compounds to become unacceptable, clinical development would be delayed or halted, and as a result, Janssen may terminate the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement, which would severely and adversely affect our business prospects, and may cause us to cease operations.***

PTG-200 or any second-generation compounds may prove to have undesirable or unintended side effects or other characteristics adversely affecting its safety, efficacy or cost effectiveness that could prevent or limit its approval for marketing and successful commercial use, or that could delay or prevent the commencement and/or completion of clinical trials. If regulatory submissions requesting approval to market PTG-200 or any such second-generation compounds are submitted, after reviewing the data in such submissions, the FDA and regulatory agencies in other countries may conclude that the overall benefit-risk profile of treatment is unacceptable, and clinical development would be delayed or halted. Any of these events would severely harm our business and prospects.

Clinical trials by their nature examine the effects of a potential therapy in a sample of the potential future patient population. As such, clinical trials conducted with PTG-200 or any second-generation compounds may not uncover all possible adverse events that patients may experience. We or Janssen may in the future observe or report dose-limiting or other safety issues in potential future clinical trials.

The occurrence of these events may cause Janssen to abandon its development of PTG-200 or any second-generation compounds entirely and terminate the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement. Any termination of the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement by Janssen would have a material adverse effect on our results of operations, financial condition, business prospects and the future of PTG-200 and any second-generation compounds.

***There may be disagreements between Janssen and Protagonist during the term of the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement, and if they are not settled amicably or in the favor of Protagonist, the result may harm our business.***

We are subject to the risk of possible disagreements with Janssen, including those regarding the development, manufacture, and commercialization of PTG-200 or any second-generation compounds, interpretation of the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement, and ownership of proprietary rights. In addition, in certain circumstances, we may believe that a particular milestone has been achieved and Janssen may disagree with our belief. In that case, receipt of that milestone payment may be delayed or may never be received, which would adversely affect our financial condition and may require us to adjust our operating plans.

The joint governance structure contemplated by the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement will cease to have decision-making authority once the development term ends, which will preclude our ability to participate in any further decision-making for PTG-200 and any second-generation compounds. Reliance on a joint governance structure also subjects us to the risk that changes in key management personnel who are members of the various joint committees may materially and adversely affect the functioning of these committees, which could significantly delay or preclude development and/or commercialization. As a result of possible disagreements with Janssen, we also may become involved in litigation or arbitration, which would be time-consuming for our management and employees and expensive.

***We may not be successful in obtaining or maintaining development and commercialization collaborations, any collaboration arrangements we enter into in the future may not be successful, and any potential partner may not devote sufficient resources to the development or commercialization of our product candidates or may otherwise fail in development or commercialization efforts, which could adversely affect our ability to develop certain of our product candidates and our financial condition and operating results.***

Other than our Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement, we have no active collaborations for any of our product candidates. Even if we are able to establish other collaboration arrangements, any such collaboration, including the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement, may not ultimately be successful, which could have a negative impact on our business, results of operations, financial condition and growth prospects. While we currently plan to enter into collaborations that are limited to certain identified territories, there can be no assurance that we would maintain significant rights or control of future development and commercialization of such product candidate. Accordingly, if we collaborate with a third party for development and commercialization of a product candidate, we may relinquish some or all of the control over the future success of that product candidate to the third party, and that partner may not devote sufficient resources to the development or commercialization of our product candidate or may otherwise fail in development or commercialization efforts, in which event the development and commercialization of the product candidate in the collaboration could be delayed or terminated and our business could be substantially harmed. We will face, to the extent that we decide to enter into collaboration arrangements, significant competition in seeking appropriate collaborators. In addition, the terms of any potential collaboration or other arrangement that we may establish may not be favorable to us or may not be perceived as favorable, which may negatively impact the price of our common stock. In some cases, we may be responsible for continuing development of a product candidate or research program under a collaboration, and the payments we receive from our partner may be insufficient to cover the cost of this development or may result in a dispute between the parties. Moreover, collaborations and sales and marketing arrangements are complex and time consuming to negotiate, document and implement, and they may require substantial resources to maintain, which may be detrimental to the development of our other product candidates.

We are subject to a number of additional risks associated with our dependence on collaborations with third parties, the occurrence of which could cause our collaboration arrangements to fail. Conflicts may arise between us and partners, such as conflicts concerning the implementation of development plans, efforts and resources dedicated to the product candidate, interpretation of clinical data, the achievement of milestones, the interpretation of financial provisions or the ownership of intellectual property developed during the collaboration. If any such conflicts arise, a collaborator could act in its own self-interest, which may be adverse to our interests. Any such disagreement between us and a partner could result in one or more of the following, each of which could delay or prevent the development or commercialization of our product candidates, and in turn prevent us from generating sufficient revenue to achieve or maintain profitability:

- reductions in the payment of royalties or other payments we believe are due pursuant to the applicable collaboration arrangement;
- actions taken by a partner inside or outside our collaboration which could negatively impact our rights or benefits under our collaboration; or
- unwillingness on the part of a partner to keep us informed regarding the progress of its development and commercialization activities or to permit public disclosure of the results of those activities.

In addition, the termination of a collaboration may limit our ability to obtain rights to the product or intellectual property developed by our collaborator under terms that would be sufficiently favorable for us to consider further development or investment in the terminated collaboration product candidate, even if it were returned to us.

Any future collaborations that we enter into may not be successful. The success of our collaboration arrangements will depend heavily on the efforts and activities of our collaborators. Collaborations are subject to numerous risks, which may include that:

- collaborators have significant discretion in determining the efforts and resources that they will apply to collaborations;
- collaborators may not pursue development and commercialization of our product candidates or may elect not to continue or renew development or commercialization programs based on clinical trial results, changes in their strategic focus due to the acquisition of competitive products, availability of funding or other external factors, such as a business combination that diverts resources or creates competing priorities;
- collaborators may delay clinical trials, provide insufficient funding for a clinical trial program, stop a clinical trial, abandon a product candidate, repeat or conduct new clinical trials or require a new formulation of a product candidate for clinical testing;
- collaborators could independently develop, or develop with third parties, products that compete directly or indirectly with our products or product candidates;
- a collaborator with marketing, manufacturing and distribution rights to one or more products may not commit sufficient resources to or otherwise not perform satisfactorily in carrying out these activities;
- we could grant exclusive rights to our collaborators that would prevent us from collaborating with others;
- collaborators may not properly maintain or defend our intellectual property rights or may use our intellectual property or proprietary information in a way that gives rise to actual or threatened litigation that could jeopardize or invalidate our intellectual property or proprietary information or expose us to potential liability;
- disputes may arise between us and a collaborator that causes the delay or termination of the research, development or commercialization of our current or future products or that results in costly litigation or arbitration that diverts management attention and resources;
- collaborations may be terminated, and, if terminated, may result in a need for additional capital to pursue further development or commercialization of the applicable current or future products;
- collaborators may own or co-own intellectual property covering our products that results from our collaborating with them, and in such cases, we would not have the exclusive right to develop or commercialize such intellectual property; and
- a collaborator's sales and marketing activities or other operations may not be in compliance with applicable laws resulting in civil or criminal proceedings.

***We rely on third parties to conduct our pre-clinical studies and clinical trials. If these third parties do not successfully carry out their contractual duties or do not meet regulatory requirements or expected deadlines, we may not be able to obtain timely regulatory approval for or commercialize our product candidates and our business could be substantially harmed.***

We have relied upon and plan to continue to rely upon third party CROs to monitor and manage clinical trials and collect data for our pre-clinical studies and clinical programs. We rely on these parties for execution of our pre-clinical studies and clinical trials, and control only certain aspects of their activities. Nevertheless, we are responsible for ensuring that their conduct meets regulatory requirements and that each of our studies and trials is conducted in accordance with the applicable protocol, legal, regulatory and scientific standards, and our reliance on CROs does not relieve us of our regulatory responsibilities. Thus, we and our CROs are required to comply with good clinical practices ("GCPs"), which are regulations and guidelines promulgated by the FDA, the EMA and comparable foreign regulatory authorities for all of our product candidates in clinical development. Regulatory authorities enforce these GCPs through periodic inspections of trial sponsors, principal investigators and trial sites. If we or any of our CROs fail to comply with applicable GCPs, the clinical data generated in our clinical trials may be deemed unreliable and the FDA, EMA or

comparable foreign regulatory authorities may not accept the data or require us to perform additional clinical trials before considering our filing for regulatory approval or approving our marketing application. We cannot assure you that upon inspection by a regulatory authority, such regulatory authority will determine that any of our clinical trials complies with GCPs. While we have agreements governing activities of our CROs, we may have limited influence over their actual performance and the qualifications of their personnel conducting work on our behalf. In addition, significant portions of the clinical studies for our peptide-based product candidates are expected to be conducted outside of the United States, which will make it more difficult for us to monitor CROs and perform visits of our clinical trial sites and will force us to rely heavily on CROs to ensure the proper and timely conduct of our clinical trials and compliance with applicable regulations, including GCPs. Failure to comply with applicable regulations in the conduct of the clinical studies for our peptide-based product candidates may require us to repeat clinical trials, which would delay the regulatory approval process.

Some of our CROs have an ability to terminate their respective agreements with us if it can be reasonably demonstrated that the safety of the subjects participating in our clinical trials warrants such termination, if we make a general assignment for the benefit of our creditors or if we are liquidated.

If any of our relationships with these third party CROs terminate, we may not be able to enter into arrangements with alternative CROs or do so on commercially reasonable terms. In addition, our CROs are not our employees, and except for remedies available to us under our agreements with such CROs, we cannot control whether or not they devote sufficient time and resources to our pre-clinical and clinical programs. If CROs do not successfully carry out their contractual duties or obligations or meet expected deadlines, if they need to be replaced or if the quality or accuracy of the clinical data they obtain is compromised due to the failure to adhere to our clinical protocols, regulatory requirements or for other reasons, our clinical trials may be extended, delayed or terminated and we may not be able to obtain regulatory approval for or successfully commercialize our peptide-based product candidates. As a result, our results of operations and the commercial prospects for our peptide-based product candidates would be harmed, our costs could increase substantially and our ability to generate revenue could be delayed significantly.

Switching or adding additional CROs involves additional cost and requires management time and focus. In addition, there is a natural transition period when a new CRO commences work. As a result, delays occur, which can materially impact our ability to meet our desired clinical development timelines. Though we carefully manage our relationships with our CROs, there can be no assurance that we will not encounter challenges or delays in the future or that these delays or challenges will not have a material adverse impact on our business, financial condition and prospects.

***We face a variety of manufacturing risks and rely on third parties to manufacture our drug substance and clinical drug product and we intend to rely on third parties to produce commercial supplies of any approved peptide-based product candidate.***

Our clinical trials must be conducted with product manufactured under cGMP and for Europe and other major regions, International Council for Harmonisation of Technical Requirements for Registration of Pharmaceuticals for Human Use (“ICH”) guidelines, and we rely on contract manufacturers to manufacture and provide product for us that meet these requirements. We do not currently have nor do we plan to acquire the infrastructure or capability internally to manufacture our pre-clinical and clinical drug supplies and we lack the resources and the capability to manufacture any of our peptide-based product candidates on a clinical or commercial scale. We expect to continue to depend on contract manufacturers for the foreseeable future. As we proceed with the development and potential commercialization of our product candidates, we will need to increase the scale at which the drug is manufactured which will require the development of new manufacturing processes to potentially reduce the cost of goods. We will rely on our internal process research and development efforts and those of contract manufacturers to develop the GMP manufacturing processes required for cost-effective and large scale production. If these efforts are not successful in developing cost-effective processes and if the contract manufacturers are not successful in converting it to commercial scale manufacturing, then our development and/or commercialization of our product candidates could be materially adversely affected. In addition, we have no control over the ability of our contract manufacturers to maintain adequate quality control, quality assurance and qualified personnel. Moreover, our contract manufacturers are the sole source of supply for our clinical product candidates. If we were to experience an unexpected loss of supply for any reason, whether as a

result of manufacturing, supply or storage issues or otherwise, we could experience delays, disruptions, suspensions or termination of our clinical study and planned development program, or be required to restart or repeat, any ongoing clinical trials.

We also rely on our contract manufacturers to purchase from third party suppliers the materials necessary to produce our peptide-based product candidates for our clinical trials. There are a limited number of suppliers for raw materials that we use to manufacture our drugs and there may be a need to assess alternate suppliers to prevent a possible disruption of the manufacture of the materials necessary to produce our peptide-based product candidates for our clinical trials, and if approved, for commercial sale. We do not have any control over the process or timing of the acquisition of these raw materials by our manufacturers. Moreover, we currently do not have any agreements for the commercial production of these raw materials. Although we generally do not begin a clinical trial unless we believe we have a sufficient supply of a peptide-based product candidate to complete the clinical trial, any significant delay in the supply of a peptide-based product candidate, or the raw material components thereof, for an ongoing clinical trial due to the need to replace a contract manufacturer or other third party manufacturer could considerably delay completion of our clinical trials, product testing and potential regulatory approval of our peptide-based product candidates. If our contract manufacturers or we are unable to purchase these raw materials after regulatory approval has been obtained for our peptide-based product candidates, the commercial launch of our peptide-based product candidates would be delayed or there would be a shortage in supply, which would impair our ability to generate revenue from the sale of our peptide-based product candidates.

If we submit an application for regulatory approval of any of our product candidates, the facilities used by our contract manufacturers to manufacture our product candidates will be subject to inspection and approval by the FDA or other regulatory authorities. If our contract manufacturers cannot successfully manufacture material that conforms to our specifications and the strict regulatory requirements of the FDA or others, they will not be able to secure and/or maintain regulatory approval for their manufacturing facilities. If the FDA or a comparable foreign regulatory authority does not approve these facilities for the manufacture of our peptide-based product candidates or if it withdraws any such approval in the future, we may need to find alternative manufacturing facilities, which would significantly impact our ability to develop, obtain regulatory approval for or market our peptide-based product candidates, if approved.

#### **Risks Related to Regulatory Approval**

***The regulatory approval processes of the FDA and comparable foreign authorities are lengthy, time consuming and inherently unpredictable, and if we are ultimately unable to obtain regulatory approval for our product candidates, our business will be substantially harmed.***

Our business and future profitability is substantially dependent on our ability to successfully develop, obtain regulatory approval for and then successfully commercialize our peptide-based product candidates. We are not permitted to market or promote any of our peptide-based product candidates before we receive regulatory approval from the FDA, the EMA or any other foreign regulatory authority, and we may never receive such regulatory approval for any of our peptide-based product candidates. The time required to obtain approval by the FDA and comparable foreign authorities is unpredictable, typically takes many years following the commencement of clinical trials and depends upon numerous factors, including the substantial discretion of regulatory authorities. Approval policies, regulations and the types and amount of clinical and manufacturing data necessary to gain approval may change during the course of clinical development and may vary among jurisdictions. We have not obtained regulatory approval for any product candidate and it is possible that none of our existing product candidates or any product candidates we have in development or may seek to develop in the future will ever obtain regulatory approval.

Our product candidates could fail to receive regulatory approval for many reasons, including the following:

- the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may disagree with the design or implementation of our clinical trials;
- we may be unable to demonstrate to the satisfaction of the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities that a product candidate is safe and effective for its proposed indication;

- the results of clinical trials may fail to achieve the level of statistical significance required by the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities for approval;
- we may be unable to demonstrate that a product candidate's clinical and other benefits outweigh its safety risks;
- the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities may disagree with our interpretation of data submitted in support of regulatory approval;
- the data collected from pre-clinical studies and clinical trials of our peptide-based product candidates may not be sufficient to support the submission of an NDA, supplemental NDA, or other regulatory submissions necessary to obtain regulatory approval in the United States or elsewhere;
- we or our contractors may not meet the GMP and other applicable requirements for manufacturing processes, procedures, documentation and facilities necessary for approval by the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities; and
- changes to the approval policies or regulations of the FDA or comparable foreign regulatory authorities with respect to our product candidates may result in our clinical data becoming insufficient for approval.

The lengthy regulatory approval process as well as the unpredictability of future clinical trial results may result in our failing to obtain regulatory approval to market our current product candidates, or any other product candidate, which would harm our business, results of operations and prospects significantly.

In addition, even if we were to obtain regulatory approval, regulatory authorities may approve our product candidates for fewer or more limited indications than what we requested approval for, may include safety warnings or other restrictions that may negatively impact the commercial viability of our product candidates, including the potential for a favorable price or reimbursement at a level that we would otherwise intend to charge for our products. Likewise, regulatory authorities may grant approval contingent on the performance of costly post-marketing clinical trials or the conduct of an expensive REMS, which could significantly reduce the potential for commercial success or viability of our product candidates. Any of the foregoing possibilities could materially harm the prospects for our product candidates and business and operations.

We have not previously submitted an NDA, a Marketing Authorization Application ("MAA"), or any corresponding drug approval filing to the FDA, the EMA or any comparable foreign authority for any peptide-based product candidate. Further, our product candidates may not receive regulatory approval even if we complete such filings. If we do not receive regulatory approvals for our product candidates, we may not be able to continue our operations.

***Even if we obtain and maintain approval for any of our product candidates from the FDA, we may never obtain approval for our product candidates outside of the United States, which would limit our market opportunities and adversely affect our business.***

Sales of our product candidates outside of the United States will be subject to foreign regulatory requirements governing clinical trials and marketing approval and, to the extent that we retain commercial rights following clinical development, we would plan to seek regulatory approval to commercialize our peptide-based product candidates in the United States, the EU and additional foreign countries. Even if the FDA grants marketing approval for a product candidate, comparable regulatory authorities of foreign countries must also approve the manufacturing and marketing of the product candidates in those countries. Approval procedures vary among jurisdictions and can involve requirements and administrative review periods different from, and greater than, those in the United States, including additional pre-clinical studies or clinical trials. In many countries outside the United States, a product candidate must be approved for reimbursement before it can be approved for sale in that country. In some cases, the price that we intend to charge for our products is also subject to approval. Even if a product is approved, the FDA or the EMA, as the case may



be, may limit the indications for which the product may be marketed, require extensive warnings on the product labeling or require expensive and time-consuming clinical trials or reporting as conditions of approval. Obtaining foreign regulatory approvals and compliance with foreign regulatory requirements could result in significant delays, difficulties and costs for us and could delay or prevent the introduction of our products in certain countries. Further, clinical trials conducted in one country may not be accepted by regulatory authorities in other countries and regulatory approval in one country does not ensure approval in any other country, while a failure or delay in obtaining regulatory approval in one country may have a negative effect on the regulatory approval process in others. Also, regulatory approval for any of our peptide-based product candidates may be withdrawn. If we fail to comply with the regulatory requirements in international markets or to receive applicable marketing approvals, our target market will be reduced and our ability to realize the full market potential of our peptide-based product candidates will be harmed and our business will be adversely affected.

***We may fail to obtain orphan drug designations from the FDA and/or EU for our product candidates, as applicable, and even if we obtain such designations, we may be unable to maintain the benefits associated with orphan drug designation, including the potential for market exclusivity.***

Our strategy includes filing for orphan drug designation where available for our product candidates. Under the Orphan Drug Act, the FDA may grant orphan drug designation to a drug or biologic intended to treat a rare disease or condition, which is defined as one occurring in a patient population of fewer than 200,000 in the United States, or a patient population greater than 200,000 in the United States where there is no reasonable expectation that the cost of developing the drug or biologic will be recovered from sales in the United States. In the United States, orphan drug designation entitles a party to financial incentives such as opportunities for grant funding towards clinical trial costs, tax advantages and user-fee waivers. In addition, if a product that has orphan drug designation subsequently receives the first FDA approval for the disease for which it has such designation, the product is entitled to orphan drug exclusivity, which means that the FDA may not approve any other applications, including a full NDA or BLA, to market the same drug or biologic for the same indication for seven years, except in limited circumstances, such as a showing of clinical superiority to the product with orphan drug exclusivity or where the manufacturer is unable to assure sufficient product quantity.

PTG-300 has received orphan drug designation for the treatment of patients with beta-thalassemia from the FDA and EU. Despite this designation, we may be unable to maintain the benefits associated with orphan drug status, including market exclusivity. We may not be the first to obtain regulatory approval of a product candidate for the beta-thalassemia or any other orphan-designated indication that we may pursue due to the uncertainties associated with developing pharmaceutical products. In addition, exclusive marketing rights in the United States may be limited if we seek approval for an indication broader than the orphan-designated indication or may be lost if the FDA later determines that the request for designation was materially defective or if we are unable to assure sufficient quantities of the product to meet the needs of patients with the orphan-designated disease or condition. Further, even if we obtain orphan drug designation exclusivity for a product, that exclusivity may not effectively protect the product from competition because different drugs with different active moieties may receive and be approved for the same condition, and only the first applicant to receive approval will receive the benefits of marketing exclusivity. Even after an orphan-designated product is approved, the FDA can subsequently approve a later drug with the same active moiety for the same condition if the FDA concludes that the later drug is clinically superior if it is shown to be safer, more effective or makes a major contribution to patient care. Orphan drug designation neither shortens the development time or regulatory review time of a drug, nor gives the drug any advantage in the regulatory review or approval process. In addition, while we may seek orphan drug designation for our product candidates, we may never receive such designations.



## **Risks Related to Commercialization of our Product Candidates**

***We currently have no marketing and sales organization. To the extent any of our peptide-based product candidates for which we maintain commercial rights is approved for marketing, if we are unable to establish marketing and sales capabilities or enter into agreements with third parties to market and sell our peptide-based product candidates, we may not be able to effectively market and sell any peptide-based product candidates, or generate product revenue.***

We currently do not have a marketing or sales organization for the marketing, sales and distribution of pharmaceutical products. In order to commercialize any peptide-based product candidates that receive marketing approval, we would have to build marketing, sales, distribution, managerial and other non-technical capabilities or make arrangements with third parties to perform these services, and we may not be successful in doing so. In the event of successful development of any of our product candidates, we may elect to build a targeted specialty sales force which will be expensive and time consuming. Any failure or delay in the development of our internal sales, marketing and distribution capabilities would adversely impact the commercialization of these products. With respect to our peptide-based product candidates, we may choose to partner with third parties that have direct sales forces and established distribution systems, either to augment our own sales force and distribution systems or in lieu of our own sales force and distribution systems, and in the case of the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement, we may elect to exercise our Co-Detailing Option, which would require us to establish a U.S. sales team. If we are unable to enter into collaborations with third parties for the commercialization of approved products, if any, on acceptable terms or at all, or if any such partner does not devote sufficient resources to the commercialization of our product or otherwise fails in commercialization efforts, we may not be able to successfully commercialize any of our peptide-based product candidates that receive regulatory approval. If we are not successful in commercializing our peptide-based product candidates, either on our own or through collaborations with one or more third parties, our future revenue will be materially and adversely impacted.

***We have not yet negotiated our agreement with Janssen specifying all of the terms of our Co-Detailing Option and would need to develop our own internal sales force.***

Pursuant to the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement, we have an option, which, if PTG-200 and/or any second-generation compounds are approved for commercial sale, allows us to elect to provide up to 30% of the PTG-200 selling effort in the United States with sales force personnel (the “Co-Detailing Option”). While the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement includes the material terms of our Co-Detailing Option, Janssen and we mutually agreed to negotiate a separate agreement specifying the detailed activities and responsibilities in respect of the marketing and co-promotion following our election to exercise our Co-Detailing Option. We will need to negotiate this separate agreement with Janssen and, as a result, Janssen may place restrictions or additional obligations on us, including financial obligations. Any restrictions or additional obligations may restrict our co-detailing activities or involve more significant financial or other obligations than we currently anticipate. In addition, we have no sales experience as a company. There are risks involved with establishing our own sales force capabilities. Developing an internal sales force and function will require substantial expenditures and will be time-consuming, may expose us to unforeseen costs and expenses, and we may not be able to effectively recruit, train or retain sales personnel. Accordingly, we may be unable to establish our own sales force which could effectively preclude our ability to take any advantage of participating in co-detailing PTG-200 and/or any second-generation compounds in the United States. In addition, any sales force we establish may not be effective, or may be less effective than the any sales force that Janssen utilizes to promote PTG-200 and/or any second-generation compounds. In such event, commercialization may be adversely affected, which could materially and adversely affect any sales milestone payments or royalties we may receive under the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement.

***Even if our product candidates receive marketing approval, they may fail to achieve market acceptance by physicians, patients, government payors (including Medicare and Medicaid programs), private insurers, and other third-party payors, or others in the medical community necessary for commercial success.***

If any of our product candidates receive marketing approval, they may nonetheless fail to gain sufficient market acceptance by physicians, patients, government payors, other third-party payors and other healthcare providers. If any of our approved products fail to achieve an adequate level of acceptance, we may not generate significant revenue to

become profitable. The degree of market acceptance, if approved for commercial sale, will depend on a number of factors, including but not limited to:

- the efficacy and potential advantages compared to alternative treatments;
- effectiveness of sales and marketing efforts;
- the cost of treatment in relation to alternative treatments;
- our ability to offer our product candidates for sale at competitive prices;
- the convenience and ease of administration compared to alternative treatments;
- the willingness of the target patient population to try new therapies and of physicians to prescribe these therapies;
- the willingness of the medical community to offer customers our product candidates in addition to or in the place of current injectable therapies;
- the strength of marketing and distribution support;
- the availability of government and third-party coverage and adequate reimbursement;
- the prevalence and severity of any side effects; and
- any restrictions on the use of our product candidates together with other medications.

Because we expect sales of our peptide-based product candidates, if approved, to generate revenue for us to achieve profitability, the failure of our peptide-based product candidates to achieve market acceptance would harm our business and could require us to seek collaborations or undertake additional financings sooner than we would otherwise plan.

***Recently enacted and future legislation may increase the difficulty and cost for us to obtain marketing approval of and commercialize our product candidates and affect the prices we may obtain.***

In the United States and some foreign jurisdictions, there have been, and we expect there will continue to be, a number of legislative and regulatory changes and proposed changes regarding the healthcare system that could, among other things, prevent or delay marketing approval of our product candidates, restrict or regulate post-approval activities and affect our ability to profitably sell any peptide-based product candidates for which we obtain marketing approval.

For example, in the United States in March 2010, the ACA was enacted to increase access to health insurance, reduce or constrain the growth of healthcare spending, enhance remedies against fraud and abuse, add new transparency requirements for health care and the health insurance industries, impose new taxes and fees on the health industry and impose additional health policy reforms. The law has continued the downward pressure on pharmaceutical pricing, especially under the Medicare program, and increased the industry's regulatory burdens and operating costs. Among the provisions of the ACA of importance to our potential peptide-based product candidates are the following:

- an annual, non-tax deductible fee payable by any entity that manufactures or imports specified branded prescription drugs and biologic agents payable to the federal government based on each company's market share of prior year total sales of branded products to certain federal healthcare programs;
- an increase in the statutory minimum rebates a manufacturer must pay under the Medicaid Drug Rebate Program;

- a new methodology by which rebates owed by manufacturers under the Medicaid Drug Rebate Program are calculated for drugs that are inhaled, infused, instilled, implanted or injected;
- extension of manufacturers' Medicaid rebate liability to individuals enrolled in Medicaid managed care organizations;
- expansion of eligibility criteria for Medicaid programs in certain states;
- a new Medicare Part D coverage gap discount program, in which manufacturers must now agree to offer 70% point-of-sale discounts off negotiated prices of applicable brand drugs to eligible beneficiaries under their coverage gap period, as a condition for the manufacturer's outpatient drugs to be covered under Medicare Part D;
- expansion of the entities eligible for discounts under the Public Health Service pharmaceutical pricing program;
- a new requirement to annually report drug samples that manufacturers and distributors provide to physicians; and
- a new Patient-Centered Outcomes Research Institute to oversee, identify priorities in, and conduct comparative clinical effectiveness research, along with funding for such research.

The financial impact of the ACA over the next few years will depend on a number of factors including but not limited to the policies reflected in implementing regulations and guidance and changes in sales volumes for products affected by the new system of rebates, discounts and fees.

Some of the provisions of the ACA have yet to be implemented, and there have been judicial and Congressional challenges to certain aspects of the ACA, as well as recent efforts by the current administration to repeal or replace certain aspects of the ACA. Since January 2017, the President has signed two Executive Orders and other directives designed to delay the implementation of certain provisions of the ACA or otherwise circumvent some of the requirements for health insurance mandated by the ACA. Concurrently, Congress has considered legislation that would repeal or repeal and replace all or part of the ACA. While Congress has not passed comprehensive repeal legislation, two bills affecting the implementation of certain taxes under the ACA have been enacted. The Tax Cuts and Jobs Act of 2017 (the "Tax Act") includes a provision repealing, effective January 1, 2019, the tax-based shared responsibility payment imposed by the ACA on certain individuals who fail to maintain qualifying health coverage for all or part of a year that is commonly referred to as the "individual mandate." Additionally, on January 22, 2018, the President signed a continuing resolution on appropriations for fiscal year 2018 that delayed the implementation of certain fees mandated fees under the ACA, including the so-called "Cadillac" tax on certain high cost employer-sponsored insurance plans, the annual fee imposed on certain health insurance providers based on market share, and the medical device excise tax on non-exempt medical devices. Further, the Bipartisan Budget Act of 2018, among other things, amends the ACA, effective January 1, 2019, to close the coverage gap in most Medicare drug plans, commonly referred to as the "donut hole." Congress may consider other legislation to repeal or replace other elements of the ACA. On December 14, 2018, a Texas U.S. District Court Judge ruled that the ACA is unconstitutional in its entirety because the "individual mandate" was repealed by Congress as part of the Tax Act. While the Texas U.S. Court Judge, as well as the current administration and CMS, have stated that the ruling will have no immediate effect pending appeal of the decision, it is unclear how this decision, subsequent appeals and other efforts to repeal and replace the ACA will impact the ACA and our business.

In addition, other legislative changes have been proposed and adopted in the United States since the ACA was enacted. These changes included aggregate reductions to Medicare payments to providers of 2% per fiscal year, which went into effect in April 2013 and, due to subsequent legislative amendments to the statute, including the BBA, will remain in effect through 2027 unless additional action is taken by Congress. In January 2013, the American Taxpayer Relief Act of 2012 was signed into law, which, among other things, further reduced Medicare payments to several types

of providers and increased the statute of limitations period in which the government may recover overpayments to providers from three to five years. Further, there has been heightened governmental scrutiny over the manner in which manufacturers set prices for their marketed products. Such scrutiny has resulted in several recent Congressional inquiries and proposed and enacted federal and state legislation designed to, among other things, bring more transparency to product pricing, review the relationship between pricing and manufacturer patient programs, and reform government program reimbursement methodologies for products. At the federal level, the current administration's budget proposal for fiscal year 2019 contains further drug price control measures that could be enacted during the 2019 budget process or in other future legislation, including, for example, measures to permit Medicare Part D plans to negotiate the price of certain drugs under Medicare Part B, to allow some states to negotiate drug prices under Medicaid, and to eliminate cost sharing for generic drugs for low-income patients. Further, the current administration released a "Blueprint" to lower drug prices and reduce out-of-pocket costs of drugs that contains additional proposals to increase drug manufacturer competition, increase the negotiating power of certain federal health programs, incentivize manufacturers to lower the list price of their products and reduce the out-of-pocket costs of drug products paid by consumers. While some of the existing and other proposed measures may require additional authorization to become effective, Congress and the current administration have both stated that they will continue to seek new legislative and/or administrative measures to control drug costs. At the state level, legislatures have become increasingly aggressive in passing legislation and implementing regulations designed to control pharmaceutical and biological product pricing, including price or patient reimbursement constraints, discounts, restrictions on certain product access and marketing cost disclosure and transparency measures, and, in some cases, designed to encourage importation from other countries and bulk purchasing. The implementation of cost containment measures or other healthcare reforms may prevent us from being able to generate revenue, attain profitability or commercialize our product candidates, if approved.

We expect that additional state and federal healthcare reform measures will be adopted in the future, any of which could limit the amounts that federal and state governments will pay for healthcare therapies, which could result in reduced demand for our peptide-based product candidates or additional pricing pressures.

Legislative and regulatory proposals have also been made to expand post-approval requirements and restrict sales and promotional activities for pharmaceutical products. We cannot be sure whether additional legislative changes will be enacted, or whether the FDA regulations, guidance or interpretations will be changed, or what the impact of such changes on the marketing approvals of our product candidates, if any, may be. In addition, increased scrutiny by the U.S. Congress of the FDA's approval process may significantly delay or prevent marketing approval, as well as subject us to more stringent product labeling and post-marketing testing and other requirements.

***Governments outside the United States tend to impose strict price controls, which may adversely affect our revenues, if any.***

In some countries, the pricing of prescription pharmaceuticals is subject to governmental control. In these countries, pricing negotiations with governmental authorities can take considerable time after the receipt of marketing approval for a product candidate. In addition, there can be considerable pressure by governments and other stakeholders on prices and reimbursement levels, including as part of cost containment measures. Political, economic and regulatory developments may further complicate pricing negotiations, and pricing negotiations may continue after coverage and reimbursement have been obtained. Reference pricing used by various countries and parallel distribution or arbitrage between low-priced and high-priced countries, can further reduce prices. To obtain reimbursement or pricing approval in some countries, we may be required to conduct a clinical trial that compares the cost-effectiveness of our product candidate to other available therapies, which is time-consuming and costly. If coverage and reimbursement of our product candidates are unavailable or limited in scope or amount, or if pricing is set at unsatisfactory levels, our business could be harmed, possibly materially.

***We currently conduct, and intend to continue to conduct, a substantial portion of the clinical trials for our product candidates outside of the United States. If approved, we may commercialize our product candidates abroad. We will thus be subject to the risks of doing business outside of the United States.***

We currently conduct, and intend to continue to conduct, a substantial portion of our clinical trials outside of the United States and, if approved, we intend to also market our peptide-based product candidates outside of the United

States. We are thus subject to risks associated with doing business outside of the United States. With respect to our peptide-based product candidates, we may choose to partner with third parties that have direct sales forces and established distribution systems, either to augment our own sales force and distribution systems outside of the United States or in lieu of our own sales force and distribution systems, which would indirectly expose us to these risks. Our business and financial results in the future could be adversely affected due to a variety of factors associated with conducting development and marketing of our peptide-based product candidates, if approved, outside of the United States, including:

- Medical standard of care and diagnostic criteria may differ in foreign jurisdictions, which may impact our ability to enroll and successfully complete trials designed for U.S. marketing;
- efforts to develop an international sales, marketing and distribution organization may increase our expenses, divert our management's attention from the acquisition or development of peptide-based product candidates or cause us to forgo profitable licensing opportunities in these geographies;
- changes in a specific country's or region's political and cultural climate or economic condition;
- unexpected changes in foreign laws and regulatory requirements;
- difficulty of effective enforcement of contractual provisions in local jurisdictions;
- inadequate intellectual property protection in foreign countries;
- trade-protection measures, import or export licensing requirements such as Export Administration Regulations promulgated by the U.S. Department of Commerce and fines, penalties or suspension or revocation of export privileges;
- regulations under the U.S. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act and similar foreign anti-corruption laws;
- differing payor reimbursement regimes, governmental payors or patient self-pay systems and price controls;
- the effects of applicable foreign tax structures and potentially adverse tax consequences; and
- significant adverse changes in foreign currency exchange rates which could make the cost of our clinical trials, to the extent conducted outside of the US, more expensive.

#### **Risks Related to Our Business and Industry**

***We face significant competition from other biotechnology and pharmaceutical companies, and our operating results will suffer if we fail to compete effectively.***

The biotechnology and pharmaceutical industries are intensely competitive and subject to rapid and significant technological change. We have competitors worldwide, including major multinational pharmaceutical companies, biotechnology companies, specialty pharmaceutical and generic pharmaceutical companies as well as universities and other research institutions.

Many of our competitors have substantially greater financial, technical and other resources, such as larger research and development staff, and experienced marketing and manufacturing organizations. Mergers and acquisitions in our industry may result in even more resources being concentrated in our competitors. As a result, these companies may obtain regulatory approval more rapidly than we are able and may be more effective in selling and marketing their products. Smaller or early-stage companies may also prove to be significant competitors, particularly through collaborative arrangements with large, established companies. Competition may increase further as a result of advances in the commercial applicability of newer technologies and greater availability of capital for investment in these

industries. Our competitors may succeed in developing, acquiring or licensing, on an exclusive basis, pharmaceutical products that are easier to develop, more effective or less costly than any product candidates that we are currently developing or that we may develop. If approved, our product candidates are expected to face competition from commercially available drugs as well as drugs that are in the development pipelines of our competitors.

Pharmaceutical companies may invest heavily to accelerate discovery and development of novel compounds or to in-license novel compounds that could make our product candidates less competitive. In addition, any new product that competes with an approved product must demonstrate advantages in efficacy, convenience, tolerability or safety in order to overcome price competition and to be commercially successful. If our competitors succeed in obtaining FDA, EMA or other regulatory approval or discovering, developing and commercializing drugs before we do, there would be a material adverse impact on the future prospects for our product candidates and business.

We believe that our ability to successfully compete will depend on, among other things:

- the efficacy and safety of our product candidates, in particular compared to marketed products and products in late-stage development;
- the time it takes for our product candidates to complete clinical development and receive regulatory approval, if at all;
- the ability to commercialize and market any of our product candidates that receive regulatory approval;
- the price of our products, including in comparison to branded or generic competitors;
- whether coverage and adequate levels of reimbursement are available under private and governmental health insurance plans, including Medicare;
- the ability to protect intellectual property rights related to our product candidates;
- the ability to manufacture and sell commercial quantities of any of our product candidates that receive regulatory approval; and
- acceptance of any of our approved product candidates by physicians, payors and other healthcare providers.

Because our research approach depends on our proprietary technology platform, it may be difficult for us to continue to successfully compete in the face of rapid changes in technology. If we fail to continue to advance our technology platform, technological change may impair our ability to compete effectively and technological advances or products developed by our competitors may render our technologies or product candidates obsolete, less competitive or not economical.

***If we fail to comply with state and federal healthcare regulatory laws, we could face substantial penalties, damages, fines, disgorgement, integrity oversight and reporting obligations, exclusion from participation in governmental healthcare programs, and the curtailment of our operations, any of which could adversely affect our business, operations, and financial condition.***

Healthcare providers, physicians and third-party payors will play a primary role in the recommendation and prescription of any future product candidates we may develop or any product candidates for which we obtain marketing approval. Our arrangements with third-party payors and customers may expose us to broadly applicable fraud and abuse and other healthcare laws and regulations that may affect the business or financial arrangements and relationships through which we would market, sell and distribute our products. Even though we do not and will not control referrals of healthcare services or bill directly to Medicare, Medicaid or other third-party payors, federal and state healthcare

laws and regulations pertaining to fraud and abuse and patients' rights are and will be applicable to our business. The laws that may affect our ability to operate include, but are not limited to:

- the federal Anti-Kickback Statute, which prohibits, among other things, persons and entities from knowingly and willfully soliciting, receiving, offering, or paying remuneration, directly or indirectly, in cash or in kind, in exchange for or to induce either the referral of an individual for, or the purchase, lease, order or recommendation of, any good, facility, item or service for which payment may be made, in whole or in part, under a federal healthcare program such as Medicare and Medicaid. A person or entity does not need to have actual knowledge of this statute or specific intent to violate it in order to have committed a violation;
- the federal false claims laws, including the False Claims Act, which can be imposed through whistleblower or also known as qui tam actions, which impose criminal and civil penalties against individuals or entities for knowingly presenting, or causing to be presented, to the federal government, claims for payment that are false, fictitious, or fraudulent; knowingly making, using, or causing to be made or used, a false record or statement to get a false or fraudulent claim paid or approved by the government; or knowingly making, using, or causing to be made or used, a false record or statement to avoid, decrease or conceal an obligation to pay money to the federal government; in addition, the government may assert that a claim including items and services resulting from a violation of the federal Anti-Kickback Statute constitutes a false or fraudulent claim for purposes of the False Claims Act;
- the federal Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996 ("HIPAA"), which imposes additional criminal and civil liability for, among other things, willfully executing, or attempting to execute, a scheme to defraud any healthcare benefit program or making false or fraudulent statements relating to healthcare matters; similar to the federal Anti-Kickback Statute, a person or entity does not need to have actual knowledge of the statute or specific intent to violate it in order to have committed a violation;
- HIPAA, as amended by the Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health Act and their implementing regulations, which also imposes obligations, including mandatory contractual terms, on HIPAA-covered entities and their business associates with respect to safeguarding the privacy, security and transmission of individually identifiable health information;
- the federal civil monetary penalties statute, which prohibits, among other things, the offering or giving of remuneration to a Medicare or Medicaid beneficiary that the person knows or should know is likely to influence the beneficiary's selection of a particular supplier of items or services reimbursable by a federal or state governmental program;
- the federal Physician Payments Sunshine Act, which requires certain manufacturers of drugs, devices, biologics and medical supplies for which payment is available under Medicare, Medicaid or the Children's Health Insurance Program (with certain exceptions) to report annually to the government information related to certain payments and other "transfers of value" made to physicians (defined to include doctors, dentists, optometrists, podiatrists and chiropractors) and teaching hospitals, and requires applicable manufacturers to report annually to the government ownership and investment interests held by the physicians described above and their immediate family members; and
- analogous state and foreign laws and regulations, such as state anti-kickback and false claims laws, which may apply to sales or marketing arrangements and claims involving healthcare items or services reimbursed by any third-party payor, including commercial insurers; state laws that require pharmaceutical companies to comply with the pharmaceutical industry's voluntary compliance guidelines and the relevant compliance guidance promulgated by the federal government, or otherwise restrict payments that may be made to healthcare providers and other potential referral sources; state laws that require drug manufacturers to report information related to payments and other transfers of value to physicians and other healthcare providers or marketing expenditures; state and local laws that require the registration of pharmaceutical sales representatives; and state and foreign laws governing the privacy and security of health information in some



circumstances, many of which differ from each other in significant ways and often are not preempted by HIPAA, thus complicating compliance efforts.

Further, the ACA, among other things, amended the intent requirements of the federal Anti-Kickback Statute and certain criminal statutes governing healthcare fraud. A person or entity can now be found guilty of violating the statute without actual knowledge of the statute or specific intent to violate it. In addition, ACA provided that the government may assert that a claim including items or services resulting from a violation of the federal Anti-Kickback Statute constitutes a false or fraudulent claim for purposes of the False Claims Act. Any violations of these laws, or any action against us for violation of these laws, even if we successfully defend against it, could result in a material adverse effect on our reputation, business, results of operations and financial condition.

We have entered into consulting and scientific advisory board arrangements with physicians and other healthcare providers, including some who could influence the use of our product candidates, if approved. While we have worked to structure our arrangements to comply with applicable laws, because of the complex and far-reaching nature of these laws, regulatory agencies may view these transactions as prohibited arrangements that must be restructured, or discontinued, or for which we could be subject to other significant penalties. We could be adversely affected if regulatory agencies interpret our financial relationships with providers who may influence the ordering of and use our product candidates, if approved, to be in violation of applicable laws.

The scope and enforcement of each of these laws is uncertain and subject to rapid change in the current environment of healthcare reform. Federal and state enforcement bodies have continued to increase their scrutiny of interactions between healthcare companies and healthcare providers, which has led to a number of investigations, prosecutions, convictions and settlements in the healthcare industry. Responding to investigations can be time- and resource-consuming and can divert management's attention from the business. Additionally, as a result of these investigations, healthcare providers and entities may have to agree to additional onerous compliance and reporting requirements as part of a consent decree or corporate integrity agreement. Any such investigation or settlement could increase our costs or otherwise have an adverse effect on our business.

If our operations are found to be in violation of any of these laws or any other governmental laws and regulations that may apply to us, we may be subject to significant civil, criminal and administrative penalties, damages, fines, disgorgement, imprisonment, integrity oversight and reporting obligations, exclusion from government funded healthcare programs, such as Medicare and Medicaid, disgorgement, contractual damages, reputational harm, diminished profits and the curtailment or restructuring of our operations. If, and to the extent that, Janssen or we are unable to comply with these regulations, our ability to earn potential royalties from worldwide net sales of PTG-200 would be materially and adversely impacted. If any of the physicians or other healthcare providers or entities with whom we expect to do business is found to be not in compliance with applicable laws, they may be subject to criminal, civil or administrative sanctions, including exclusions from government funded healthcare programs. The imposition of any of these penalties or other commercial limitations could negatively impact our collaboration with Janssen or cause Janssen to terminate the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement, either of which would materially and adversely affect our business, financial condition and results of operations.

***Our future success depends on our ability to retain our executive officers and to attract, retain and motivate qualified personnel. If we are not successful in attracting and retaining highly qualified personnel, we may not be able to successfully implement our business strategy.***

Our industry has experienced a high rate of turnover of management personnel in recent years. Our ability to compete in the highly competitive biotechnology and pharmaceuticals industries depends upon our ability to attract and retain highly qualified managerial, scientific, medical and regulatory personnel. We are highly dependent on our existing senior management team, especially Dinesh V. Patel, Ph.D., our President and Chief Executive Officer, David Y. Liu, Ph.D., our Chief Scientific Officer, Samuel Saks, M.D., our Chief Medical Officer, Suneel Gupta, Ph.D., our Chief Development Officer, and Don Kalkofen, our Chief Financial Officer. In order to induce valuable employees to continue their employment with us, we have provided stock options that vest over time. The value to employees of stock options that vest over time is significantly affected by movements in our stock price that are beyond our control and may at any time be insufficient to maintain retention incentives or counteract more lucrative offers from other



companies. All of our employees may terminate their employment with us at any time, with or without notice. The loss of the services of any of our executive officers or other key employees and our inability to find suitable replacements would harm our research and development efforts, our collaboration efforts, as well as our business, financial condition and prospects. Our success also depends on our ability to continue to attract, retain and motivate highly skilled and experienced personnel with scientific, medical, regulatory, manufacturing and management training and skills.

We may not be able to attract or retain qualified personnel in the future due to the intense competition for a limited number of qualified personnel among biopharmaceutical, biotechnology, pharmaceutical and other businesses. Many of the other biopharmaceutical and pharmaceutical companies that we compete against for qualified personnel have greater financial and other resources, different risk profiles and a longer history in the industry than we do. Our competitors may provide higher compensation or more diverse opportunities and better opportunities for career advancement. Any or all of these competing factors may limit our ability to continue to attract and retain high quality personnel, which could negatively affect our ability to successfully develop and commercialize peptide-based product candidates and to grow our business and operations as currently contemplated.

***We may need to expand the size of our organization, and we may experience difficulties in managing this growth.***

As of June 30, 2019, we had 64 full-time employees, including 47 employees engaged in research and development. As our development and commercialization plans and strategies develop and continue to operate as a public company, we expect to need additional managerial, operational, scientific, sales, marketing, development, regulatory, manufacturing, financial and other resources. Future growth would impose significant added responsibilities on members of management, including:

- designing and managing our clinical trials effectively;
- identifying, recruiting, maintaining, motivating and integrating additional employees;
- managing our manufacturing and development efforts effectively;
- improving our managerial, development, operational and financial systems and controls; and
- expanding our facilities.

As our operations expand, we expect that we will need to manage relationships with strategic collaborators, CROs, contract manufacturers, suppliers, vendors and other third parties. Our future financial performance and our ability to develop and commercialize our peptide-based product candidates and to compete effectively will depend, in part, on our ability to manage any future growth effectively. We may not be successful in accomplishing these tasks in growing our company, and our failure to accomplish any of them could adversely affect our business and operations.

***Significant disruptions of information technology systems or breaches of data security could adversely affect our business.***

Our business is increasingly dependent on critical, complex and interdependent information technology systems, including Internet-based systems, to support business processes as well as internal and external communications. The size and complexity of our internal computer systems and those of our CROs, contract manufacturers, collaboration partner, and other third parties on which we rely may make them potentially vulnerable to breakdown, telecommunications and electrical failures, malicious intrusion and computer viruses that may result in the impairment of key business processes. In addition, our systems are potentially vulnerable to data security breaches-whether by employees or others-that may expose sensitive data to unauthorized persons. Such data security breaches could lead to the loss of trade secrets or other intellectual property or could lead to the public exposure of personally identifiable information (including sensitive personal information) of our employees, collaborators, clinical trial patients, and others. A data security breach or privacy violation that leads to disclosure or modification of or prevents access to patient information, including personally identifiable information or protected health information, could harm our reputation, compel us to comply with federal and/or state breach notification laws, subject us to mandatory corrective

action, require us to verify the correctness of database contents and otherwise subject us to liability under laws and regulations that protect personal data, resulting in increased costs or loss of revenue. If we are unable to prevent such data security breaches or privacy violations or implement satisfactory remedial measures, our operations could be disrupted, and we may suffer loss of reputation, financial loss and other regulatory penalties because of lost or misappropriated information, including sensitive patient data. In addition, these breaches and other inappropriate access can be difficult to detect, and any delay in identifying them may lead to increased harm of the type described above. Moreover, the prevalent use of mobile devices that access confidential information increases the risk of data security breaches, which could lead to the loss of confidential information, trade secrets or other intellectual property. While we have implemented security measures to protect our data security and information technology systems, such measures may not prevent such events. Any such disruptions and breaches of security could have a material adverse effect on the development of our product candidates as well as our business and financial condition.

***Our insurance policies are expensive and only protect us from some business risks, which will leave us exposed to significant uninsured liabilities.***

We do not carry insurance for all categories of risk that our business may encounter. Some of the policies we currently maintain include general liability, employment practices liability, property, cyber, auto liability, workers' compensation, clinical trial, products liability and directors' and officers' insurance. We do not know, however, if we will be able to maintain insurance with adequate levels of coverage to insure risks which could arise from our operations. Any significant uninsured losses or liabilities may require us to pay substantial amounts from corporate cash intended to fund operations, which would adversely affect our financial position and results of operations.

***If we fail to comply with environmental, health and safety laws and regulations, we could become subject to fines or penalties or incur costs that could have a material adverse effect on the success of our business.***

We are subject to numerous environmental, health and safety laws and regulations, including those governing laboratory procedures and the handling, use, storage, treatment and disposal of hazardous materials and wastes. Our operations involve the use of hazardous and flammable materials, including chemicals and biological materials. Our operations also produce hazardous waste products. We generally contract with third parties for the disposal of these materials and wastes. We cannot eliminate the risk of contamination or injury from these materials. In the event of contamination or injury resulting from our use of hazardous materials, we could be held liable for any resulting damages, and any liability could exceed our resources. We also could incur significant costs associated with civil or criminal fines and penalties.

If we, or our contractors or agents are unable to comply with federal, state and county environmental and safety laws and regulations, including those governing laboratory procedures and the handling of biohazardous materials, chemicals and various radioactive compounds, considerable additional costs or liabilities could be assessed that would have a material adverse effect on our financial condition. We, our collaborators, contractors or agents may be required to incur significant costs to comply with current or future environmental laws and regulations and may be adversely affected by the cost of compliance with these laws and regulations.

Although we maintain workers' compensation insurance to cover us for costs and expenses we may incur due to injuries to our employees resulting from the use of hazardous materials or other work-related injuries, this insurance may not provide adequate coverage against potential liabilities. In addition, we may incur substantial costs in order to comply with current or future environmental, health and safety laws and regulations. These current or future laws and regulations may impair our research, development or production efforts. Failure to comply with these laws and regulations also may result in substantial fines, penalties or other sanctions.

***Our employees, independent contractors, principal investigators, consultants and vendors may engage in misconduct or other improper activities, including noncompliance with regulatory standards and requirements, which could have a material adverse effect on our business.***

We are exposed to the risk that our employees, independent contractors, principal investigators, consultants and vendors may engage in fraudulent conduct or other illegal activity. Misconduct by these parties could include

intentional, reckless and/or negligent conduct or disclosure of unauthorized activities to us that violates: (i) FDA laws and regulations or those of comparable foreign regulatory authorities, including those laws that require the reporting of true, complete and accurate information to the FDA, (ii) manufacturing standards, (iii) federal and state data privacy, security, fraud and abuse and other healthcare laws and regulations established and enforced by comparable foreign regulatory authorities, or (iv) laws that require the true, complete and accurate reporting of financial information or data. Activities subject to these laws also involve the improper use or misrepresentation of information obtained in the course of clinical trials, creating fraudulent data in our pre-clinical studies or clinical trials or illegal misappropriation of drug product, which could result in regulatory sanctions and cause serious harm to our reputation. It is not always possible to identify and deter misconduct by employees and third-parties, and the precautions we take to detect and prevent this activity may not be effective in controlling unknown or unmanaged risks or losses or in protecting us from governmental investigations or other actions or lawsuits stemming from a failure to be in compliance with such laws or regulations. Additionally, we are subject to the risk that a person or government could allege such fraud or other misconduct, even if none occurred. If any such actions are instituted against us, and we are not successful in defending ourselves or asserting our rights, those actions could have a significant impact on our business and results of operations, including the imposition of significant fines or other sanctions.

***If product liability lawsuits are brought against us, we may incur substantial liabilities and may be required to limit commercialization of any of our peptide-based product candidates, if approved.***

We face an inherent risk of product liability as a result of the clinical testing of our peptide-based product candidates and will face an even greater risk if we commercialize any products. For example, we may be sued if any product we develop allegedly causes injury or is found to be otherwise unsuitable during product testing, manufacturing, marketing or sale. Any such product liability claims may include allegations of defects in manufacturing, defects in design, a failure to warn of dangers inherent in the product, negligence, strict liability and a breach of warranties. Claims could also be asserted under state consumer protection acts. If we cannot successfully defend ourselves against product liability claims, we may incur substantial liabilities or be required to stop development or, if approved, limit commercialization of our peptide-based product candidates.

Even successful defense would require significant financial and management resources. Regardless of the merits or eventual outcome, liability claims may result in:

- delay or termination of clinical studies;
- injury to our reputation;
- withdrawal of clinical trial participants;
- initiation of investigations by regulators;
- costs to defend the related litigation;
- a diversion of management's time and our resources;
- substantial monetary awards to trial participants or patients;
- decreased demand for our peptide-based product candidates;
- product recalls, withdrawals or labeling, marketing or promotional restrictions;
- loss of revenue from product sales; and
- the inability to commercialize any of our peptide-based product candidates, if approved.

Our inability to obtain and retain sufficient product liability insurance at an acceptable cost to protect against potential product liability claims could prevent or inhibit the development or commercialization of our peptide-based product candidates. We currently carry clinical trial liability insurance for our clinical trials. Although we maintain such insurance, any claim that may be brought against us could result in a court judgment or settlement in an amount that is not covered, in whole or in part, by our insurance or that is in excess of the limits of our insurance coverage. Our insurance policies also have various exclusions, and we may be subject to a product liability claim for which we have no coverage. We will have to pay any amounts awarded by a court or negotiated in a settlement that exceed our coverage limitations or that are not covered by our insurance, and we may not have, or be able to obtain, sufficient capital to pay such amounts.

***Our headquarters and certain of our data storage facilities are located near known earthquake fault zones. The occurrence of an earthquake, fire or any other catastrophic event could disrupt our operations or the operations of third parties who provide vital support functions to us, which could have a material adverse effect on our business and financial condition.***

We and some of the third party service providers on which we depend for various support functions, such as data storage, are vulnerable to damage from catastrophic events, such as power loss, natural disasters, terrorism and similar unforeseen events beyond our control. Our corporate headquarters and other facilities are located in the San Francisco Bay Area, which in the past has experienced severe earthquakes and fires.

We do not carry earthquake insurance. Earthquakes or other natural disasters could severely disrupt our operations, and have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations, financial condition and prospects.

If a natural disaster, power outage or other event occurred that prevented us from using all or a significant portion of our headquarters, damaged critical infrastructure, such as our data storage facilities or financial systems, or that otherwise disrupted operations, it may be difficult or, in certain cases, impossible for us to continue our business for a substantial period of time. We do not have a disaster recovery and business continuity plan in place. We may incur substantial expenses as a result of the absence or limited nature of our internal or third party service provider disaster recovery and business continuity plans, which, particularly when taken together with our lack of earthquake insurance, could have a material adverse effect on our business. Furthermore, integral parties in our supply chain are operating from single sites, increasing their vulnerability to natural disasters or other sudden, unforeseen and severe adverse events. If such an event were to affect our supply chain, it could have a material adverse effect on our development plans and business.

***The insurance coverage and reimbursement status of newly-approved products is uncertain. Failure to obtain or maintain adequate coverage and reimbursement for our peptide-based product candidates could limit our ability to generate revenue.***

The availability and extent of reimbursement by governmental and private payors is essential for most patients to be able to afford medications and therapies. Sales of any of our peptide-based product candidates that receive marketing approval will depend substantially, both in the United States and internationally, on the extent to which the costs of our peptide-based product candidates will be paid by health maintenance, managed care, pharmacy benefit and similar healthcare management organizations, or reimbursed by government health administration authorities, private health coverage insurers and other third-party payors. If reimbursement is not available, or is available only to limited levels, we may not be able to successfully commercialize our product candidates. Even if coverage is provided, the approved reimbursement amount may not be high enough to allow us to establish or maintain adequate pricing that will allow us to realize a sufficient return on our investment.

There is significant uncertainty related to the insurance coverage and reimbursement of newly approved products. In the United States, the principal decisions about reimbursement for new products are typically made by the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services (“CMS”), an agency within the United States Department of Health and Human Services. CMS decides whether and to what extent a new product will be covered and reimbursed under Medicare. Private payors tend to follow CMS to a substantial degree, but also have their own methods and approval process. Therefore, coverage and reimbursement can differ significantly from payor to payor. It is difficult to predict what CMS

will decide with respect to reimbursement for novel products such as ours since there is no body of established practices and precedents for these new products. Reimbursement agencies in Europe may be more conservative than CMS.

Outside the United States, international operations are generally subject to extensive governmental price controls and other market regulations, and we believe the increasing emphasis on cost-containment initiatives in Europe, Canada and other countries may cause us to price our tablet vaccine candidates on less favorable terms than we currently anticipate. In many countries, particularly the countries of the European Union, the prices of medical products are subject to varying price control mechanisms as part of national health systems. In these countries, pricing negotiations with governmental authorities can take considerable time after the receipt of marketing approval for a product. To obtain reimbursement or pricing approval in some countries, we may be required to conduct a clinical trial that compares the cost-effectiveness of our peptide-based product candidates to other available therapies. In general, the prices of products under such systems are substantially lower than in the United States. Other countries allow companies to fix their own prices for products but monitor and control company profits. Additional foreign price controls or other changes in pricing regulation could restrict the amount that we are able to charge for our peptide-based product candidates. Accordingly, in markets outside the United States, the reimbursement for our products may be reduced compared with the United States and may be insufficient to generate commercially reasonable revenues and profits.

Moreover, increasing efforts by governmental and third-party payors, in the United States and internationally, to cap or reduce healthcare costs may cause such organizations to limit both coverage and level of reimbursement for new products approved and, as a result, they may not cover or provide adequate payment for our product candidates. We expect to experience pricing pressures in connection with the sale of any of our tablet vaccine candidates due to the trend toward managed healthcare, the increasing influence of health maintenance organizations and additional legislative changes. The downward pressure on healthcare costs in general, particularly prescription drugs and surgical procedures and other treatments, has become very intense. As a result, increasingly high barriers are being erected to the entry of new products into the healthcare market.

#### **Risks Related to Our Intellectual Property**

***If we are unable to obtain or protect intellectual property rights related to our product candidates and technologies, we may not be able to compete effectively in our markets.***

We rely upon a combination of patent protection, trade secret protection and confidentiality agreements to protect the intellectual property related to our product candidates and technologies. The strength of patents in the biotechnology and pharmaceutical field involves complex legal and scientific questions and can be uncertain. The patent prosecution process is expensive and time-consuming, and we may not be able to file and prosecute all necessary or desirable patent applications at a reasonable cost, in a timely manner, or in all jurisdictions. The patent applications that we own or license may fail to result in issued patents in the United States or in other foreign countries, or they may fail to result in issued patents with claims that cover our product candidates or technologies in the United States or in other foreign countries. There is no assurance that all the potentially relevant prior art relating to our patent and patent applications has been found, which can invalidate a patent or prevent a patent from issuing from a pending patent application. Even if patents have been issued, or do successfully issue, from our patent applications, third parties may challenge the validity, enforceability or scope thereof, which may result in such patents being narrowed, invalidated or held unenforceable. Furthermore, even if they are unchallenged, our patent and patent applications may not adequately protect our intellectual property, provide exclusivity for our product candidates and technologies, or prevent others from designing around our claims.

If the breadth or strength of protection provided by the patent and patent applications we hold, obtain or pursue with respect to our product candidates and technologies is challenged, or if they fail to provide meaningful exclusivity for our product candidates and technologies, it could threaten our ability to commercialize our product candidates and technologies. Several patent applications covering our product candidates and technologies have been filed. We cannot offer any assurances about which, if any, patents will issue, the breadth of any such patent, or whether any issued patents will be found invalid and unenforceable or will be threatened by third parties. Any successful opposition or other challenge to these patents or any other patents owned by or, if applicable in the future, licensed to us could

deprive us of rights necessary for the successful commercialization of any product candidates and technologies that we may develop. Since patent applications in the United States and most other countries are confidential for a period of time after filing, we cannot be certain that we or our licensors were the first to file any patent application related to our product candidates and technologies.

In addition, patents have a limited lifespan. In the United States, the natural expiration of a patent is generally 20 years after it is filed. Various extensions may be available however the life of a patent, and the protection it affords, is limited. Even if patents covering our product candidates are obtained, once the patent life has expired for a product, we may be open to competition from generic medications. For example, our granted U.S. patents covering PN-943 and PTG-200 expire in 2035, and our granted U.S. patent covering PTG-300 expires in 2034. In addition, although upon issuance in the United States the life of a patent can be increased based on certain delays caused by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office (the “PTO”), this increase can be reduced or eliminated based on certain delays caused by the patent applicant during patent prosecution. Further, if we encounter delays in our clinical trials or in gaining regulatory approval, the period of time during which we could market any of our product candidates under patent protection, if approved, would be reduced.

We may not be able to protect our intellectual property rights throughout the world. Filing, prosecuting and defending patents on all of our product candidates throughout the world would be prohibitively expensive, and our intellectual property rights in some countries outside the United States may be less extensive than those in the United States. Many companies have encountered significant problems in protecting and defending intellectual property rights in certain foreign jurisdictions. The requirements for patentability differ, in varying degrees, from country to country. The legal systems of some countries, particularly developing countries, do not favor the enforcement of patent and other intellectual property rights, especially those relating to life sciences. In addition, the laws of some foreign countries do not protect intellectual property rights, including trade secrets, to the same extent as federal and state laws of the United States. This could make it difficult for us to stop the infringement of any patents we obtain or the misappropriation of our other intellectual property rights. In addition, many countries limit the enforceability of patents against third parties, including government agencies or government contractors. In these countries, patents may provide limited or no benefit. Moreover, our ability to protect and enforce our intellectual property rights may be adversely affected by unforeseen changes in foreign intellectual property laws.

Proceedings to enforce our patent rights and other intellectual property rights in foreign jurisdictions, regardless of whether successful, would result in substantial costs and divert our efforts and attention from other aspects of our business. Furthermore, while we intend to protect our intellectual property rights in our expected significant markets, we cannot ensure that we will be able to initiate or maintain similar efforts in all jurisdictions in which we may wish to market our product candidates. Accordingly, our efforts to protect our intellectual property rights in such countries may be inadequate, which may have an adverse effect on our ability to successfully commercialize our product candidates in all of our expected significant foreign markets.

Competitors may use our technologies in jurisdictions where we have not obtained patent protection to develop their own products and, further, may export otherwise infringing products to territories where we have patent protection but enforcement is not as strong as in the United States. These products may compete with our products in jurisdictions where we do not have any issued patents and our patent claims or other intellectual property rights may not be effective or sufficient to prevent them from so competing. Also, if our trade secrets are disclosed in a foreign jurisdiction, competitors worldwide could have access to our proprietary information and we may be without satisfactory recourse. Such disclosure could have a material adverse effect on our business. If, in the future, we obtain licenses from third parties, in some circumstances, we may not have the right to control the preparation, filing and prosecution of patent applications or to maintain any patents, covering technology that we license from third parties. We may also require the cooperation of our licensors to enforce any licensed patent rights, and such cooperation may not be provided. Therefore, these patents and applications may not be prosecuted and enforced in a manner consistent with the best interests of our business. Moreover, if we do obtain necessary licenses, we will likely have obligations under those licenses, and any failure to satisfy those obligations could give our licensor the right to terminate the license. Termination of a necessary license could have a material adverse impact on our business.

While we hold issued patents and have filed patent applications to protect certain aspects of our product candidates, we also rely on trade secret protection and confidentiality agreements to protect proprietary scientific, business and technical information and know-how that is not or may not be patentable or that we elect not to patent. For example, we primarily rely on trade secrets and confidentiality agreements to protect our peptide therapeutics technology platform. Any disclosure to or misappropriation by third parties of our confidential proprietary information could enable competitors to quickly duplicate or surpass our technological achievements, thus eroding our competitive position in our market. If we are unable to protect the confidentiality of our trade secrets and proprietary know-how or if competitors independently develop viable competing products, our business and competitive position may be harmed.

We seek to protect our proprietary information, data and processes, in part, by confidentiality agreements and invention assignment agreements with our employees, consultants, scientific advisors, contractors and partners. Although these agreements are designed to protect our proprietary information, we cannot be certain that our trade secrets and other confidential proprietary information will not be disclosed or that competitors will not otherwise gain access to our trade secrets or independently develop substantially equivalent information and techniques. Although we require all of our employees to assign their inventions to us, and endeavor to execute confidentiality agreements with all of our employees, consultants, advisors and any third parties who have access to our proprietary know-how and other confidential information related to such technology, we cannot be certain that we have executed such agreements with all third parties who may have helped to develop our intellectual property or who had access to our proprietary information, nor can we be certain that our agreements will not be breached. If any of the parties to these confidentiality agreements breaches or violates the terms of such agreements, we may not have adequate remedies for any such breach or violation, and we could lose our trade secrets as a result.

We also seek to preserve the integrity and confidentiality of our data, trade secrets and know-how by maintaining physical security of our premises and physical and electronic security of our information technology systems. Monitoring unauthorized uses and disclosures is difficult, and we do not know whether the steps we have taken to protect our proprietary technologies will be effective. We cannot guarantee that our trade secrets and other proprietary and confidential information will not be disclosed or that competitors will not otherwise gain access to our trade secrets.

Enforcing a claim that a third party illegally obtained and is using our trade secrets, like patent litigation, is expensive and time-consuming, and the outcome is unpredictable. Further, the laws of some foreign countries do not protect proprietary rights to the same extent or in the same manner as the laws of the United States. The enforceability of confidentiality agreements may vary from jurisdiction to jurisdiction. As a result, we may encounter significant problems in protecting and defending our intellectual property both in the United States and abroad. Additionally, if the steps taken to maintain our trade secrets are deemed inadequate, we may have insufficient recourse against third parties for misappropriating the trade secret. We cannot guarantee that our employees, former employees or consultants will not file patent applications claiming our inventions. Because of the “first-to-file” laws in the United States, such unauthorized patent application filings may defeat our attempts to obtain patents on our own inventions.

Trade secrets and know-how can be difficult to protect as trade secrets and know-how will over time be disseminated within the industry through independent development, the publication of journal articles, and the movement of personnel skilled in the art from company to company or academic to industry scientific positions. If any of our trade secrets were to be lawfully obtained or independently developed by a competitor, we would have no right to prevent such competitor from using that technology or information to compete with us, which could harm our competitive position. If we are unable to prevent material disclosure of the intellectual property related to our technologies to third parties, we will not be able to establish or maintain a competitive advantage in our market, which could materially adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

Even if we are able to adequately protect our trade secrets and proprietary information, our trade secrets could otherwise become known or could be independently discovered by our competitors. Competitors could purchase our products and attempt to replicate some or all of the competitive advantages we derive from our development efforts, willfully infringe our intellectual property rights, design around our protected technology or develop their own competitive technologies that fall outside of our intellectual property rights. If any of our trade secrets were to be lawfully obtained or independently developed by a competitor, in the absence of patent protection, we would have no right to prevent them, or those to whom they communicate, from using that technology or information to compete with



us. If our trade secrets are not adequately protected so as to protect our market against competitors' products, others may be able to exploit our proprietary peptide product candidate discovery technologies to identify and develop competing product candidates, and thus our competitive position could be adversely affected, as could our business.

***We may be involved in lawsuits to protect or enforce our intellectual property, which could be expensive, time consuming and unsuccessful.***

Competitors may infringe our issued patents or any patents issued as a result of our pending or future patent applications. To counter infringement or unauthorized use, we may be required to file infringement claims, which can be expensive and time-consuming. In addition, in an infringement proceeding, a court may decide that a patent of ours is not valid or is unenforceable or may refuse to stop the other party in such infringement proceeding from using the technology at issue on the grounds that our patents do not cover the technology in question. An adverse result in any litigation or defense proceedings could put one or more of our patents at risk of being invalidated, held unenforceable or interpreted narrowly, and could put any of our patent applications at risk of not yielding an issued patent.

Interference or derivation proceedings provoked by third parties or brought by us, the PTO or any foreign patent authority may be necessary to determine the priority or ownership of inventions with respect to our patent or patent applications. Our defense of litigation, interference or derivation proceedings may fail and, even if successful, may result in substantial costs and distract our management and other employees. An unfavorable outcome could require us to cease using the related technology or to attempt to license rights to it from the prevailing party. Our business could be harmed if the prevailing party does not offer us a license on commercially reasonable terms, if any license is offered at all.

Because of the expense and uncertainty of litigation, we may conclude that even if a third party is infringing our issued patents, any patents that may be issued on as a result of our pending or future patent applications or other intellectual property rights, the risk-adjusted cost of bringing and enforcing such a claim or action may be too high or not in the best interest of our company or our stockholders. In such cases, we may decide that the more prudent course of action is to simply monitor the situation or initiate or seek some other non-litigious action or solution.

We may not be able to prevent misappropriation of our intellectual property, trade secrets or confidential information, particularly in countries where the laws may not protect those rights as fully as in the United States. Furthermore, because of the substantial amount of discovery required in connection with intellectual property litigation, there is a risk that some of our confidential information could be compromised by disclosure during this type of litigation. In addition, there could be public announcements of the results of hearings, motions or other interim proceedings or developments. If securities analysts or investors perceive these results to be negative, it could have a substantial adverse effect on the price of our common stock.

***Any issued patents covering our product candidates, including any patent that may issue as a result of our pending or future patent applications, could be found invalid or unenforceable if challenged in court in the United States or abroad.***

If we initiate legal proceedings against a third party to enforce a patent covering our product candidates or technologies, the defendant could counterclaim that such patent is invalid or unenforceable. In patent litigation in the United States, defendant counterclaims alleging invalidity or unenforceability are commonplace, and there are numerous grounds upon which a third party can assert invalidity or unenforceability of a patent. Grounds for a validity challenge could be an alleged failure to meet any of several statutory requirements, including lack of novelty, obviousness or non-enablement. Grounds for an unenforceability assertion could be an allegation that someone connected with prosecution of the patent withheld relevant information from the PTO, or made a misleading statement, during prosecution. Third parties may also raise similar claims before administrative bodies in the United States or abroad, even outside the context of litigation. Such mechanisms include re-examination, inter partes review, post grant review, and equivalent proceedings in foreign jurisdictions, such as opposition or derivation proceedings. Such proceedings could result in revocation or amendment to our patents in such a way that they no longer cover and protect our product candidates or technologies. The outcome following legal assertions of invalidity and unenforceability is unpredictable. With respect to the validity of our patents, for example, we cannot be certain that there is no invalidating



prior art of which we, our patent counsel, and the patent examiner were unaware of during prosecution. If a defendant were to prevail on a legal assertion of invalidity and/or unenforceability, we would lose at least part, and perhaps all, of the patent protection on our product candidates. Such a loss of patent protection could have a material adverse impact on our business.

As more groups become engaged in scientific research and product development in fields related to our product candidates, such as the IL-23 receptor, the risk of our patents, or patents that we have in-licensed, being challenged through patent interferences, derivation proceedings, oppositions, re-examinations, litigation or other means will likely increase. Challenges to our patents through these procedures can be extremely expensive and time-consuming, even if the outcome is favorable to us. An adverse outcome in a patent dispute could have a material adverse effect on our business by:

- causing us to lose patent rights in the relevant jurisdiction(s);
- subjecting us to litigation, or otherwise preventing Janssen or us from commercializing PTG-200 or other product candidates in the relevant jurisdiction(s);
- requiring Janssen or us to obtain licenses to the disputed patents;
- forcing Janssen or us to cease using the disputed technology; or
- requiring Janssen or us to develop or obtain alternative technologies.

An adverse outcome in a patent dispute could severely harm our collaboration with Janssen or cause Janssen to terminate the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement. Additionally, if patent protection is not available on any patents we have licensed to Janssen in one or more countries, our potential royalties obtained in those countries from Janssen may be non-existent or lower than we currently expect and could be reduced in accordance to the terms of the Janssen License and Collaboration Agreement.

Intellectual property disputes could cause us to spend substantial resources and distract our personnel from their normal responsibilities. Litigation or other legal proceedings relating to intellectual property claims, with or without merit, are unpredictable and generally expensive and time-consuming and, even if resolved in our favor, are likely to divert significant resources from our core business, including distracting our technical and management personnel from their normal responsibilities. In addition, there could be public announcements of the results of hearings, motions or other interim proceedings or developments and if securities analysts or investors perceive these results to be negative, it could have a substantial adverse effect on the market price of our common stock. Such litigation or proceedings could substantially increase our operating losses and reduce the resources available for development activities or any future sales, marketing or distribution activities. We may not have sufficient financial or other resources to adequately conduct such litigation or proceedings. Some of our competitors may be able to sustain the costs of such litigation or proceedings more effectively than we can because of their greater financial resources and more mature and developed intellectual property portfolios. Accordingly, despite our efforts, we may not be able to prevent third parties from infringing upon or misappropriating or from successfully challenging our intellectual property rights. Uncertainties resulting from the initiation and continuation of patent litigation or other proceedings could have a material adverse effect on our ability to compete in the marketplace.

***Competitors could enter the market with generic versions of our product candidates, which may result in a material decline in sales of our product candidates.***

Under the Hatch-Waxman Act, a pharmaceutical manufacturer may file an abbreviated new drug application (“ANDA”), seeking approval of a generic copy of an approved innovator product. Under the Hatch-Waxman Act, a manufacturer may also submit an NDA under section 505(b)(2) that references the FDA’s finding of safety and effectiveness of a previously approved drug. A 505(b)(2) NDA product may be for a new or improved version of the original innovator product. Innovative small molecule drugs may be eligible for certain periods of regulatory exclusivity (e.g., five years for new chemical entities, three years for changes to an approved drug requiring a new

clinical study, seven years for orphan drugs), which preclude FDA approval (or in some circumstances, FDA filing and review of) an ANDA or 505(b)(2) NDA relying on the FDA's finding of safety and effectiveness for the innovative drug. In addition to the benefits of regulatory exclusivity, an innovator NDA holder may have patents claiming the active ingredient, product formulation or an approved use of the drug, which would be listed with the product in the FDA publication, "Approved Drug Products with Therapeutic Equivalence Evaluations," known as the "Orange Book." If there are patents listed in the Orange Book, a generic applicant that seeks to market its product before expiration of the patents must include in the ANDA or 505(b)(2) what is known as a "Paragraph IV certification," challenging the validity or enforceability of, or claiming non-infringement of, the listed patent or patents. Notice of the certification must be given to the innovator, too, and if within 45 days of receiving notice the innovator sues to protect its patents, approval of the ANDA is stayed for 30 months, or as lengthened or shortened by the court.

Accordingly, if our product candidates are approved, competitors could file ANDAs for generic versions of our product candidates, or 505(b)(2) NDAs that reference our product candidates. If there are patents listed for our product candidates in the Orange Book, those ANDAs and 505(b)(2) NDAs would be required to include a certification as to each listed patent indicating whether the ANDA applicant does or does not intend to challenge the patent. We cannot predict whether any patents issuing from our pending patent applications will be eligible for listing in the Orange Book, how any generic competitor would address such patents, whether we would sue on any such patents, or the outcome of any such suit.

We may not be successful in securing or maintaining proprietary patent protection for products and technologies we develop or license. Moreover, if any patents that are granted and listed in the Orange Book are successfully challenged by way of a Paragraph IV certification and subsequent litigation, the affected product could more immediately face generic competition and its sales would likely decline materially. Should sales decline, we may have to write off a portion or all of the intangible assets associated with the affected product and our results of operations and cash flows could be materially and adversely affected.

***Third party claims of intellectual property infringement may prevent or delay our drug discovery and development efforts.***

Our commercial success depends in part on our ability to develop, manufacture, market and sell our drug candidates and use our proprietary technologies without infringing or otherwise violating the patents and proprietary rights of third parties. There is a substantial amount of litigation involving patent and other intellectual property rights in the biotechnology and pharmaceutical industries, including patent infringement lawsuits, interferences, derivation proceedings, post grant reviews, inter partes reviews, and reexamination proceedings before the PTO or oppositions and other comparable proceedings in foreign jurisdictions. Numerous U.S. and foreign issued patents and pending patent applications, which are owned by third parties, exist in the fields in which we are developing product candidates, and there may be third-party patents or patent applications with claims to materials, formulations, methods of manufacture or methods for treatment related to the use or manufacture of our product candidates and technologies. Third parties, including our competitors, may initiate legal proceedings against us alleging that we are infringing or otherwise violating their patent or other intellectual property rights. Given the vast number of patents in our field of technology, we cannot assure you that marketing of our product candidates or practice of our technologies will not infringe existing patents or patents that may be granted in the future. Because patent applications can take many years to issue and may be confidential for 18 months or more after filing, and because pending patent claims can be revised before issuance, there may be applications now pending of which we are unaware that may later result in issued patents that may be infringed by the practice of our peptide therapeutics technology platform or the manufacture, use or sale of our product candidates. If a patent holder believes our product candidates or technologies infringe on its patent, the patent holder may sue us even if we have received patent protection for our product candidates and technologies. In addition, third parties may obtain patents in the future and claim that our product candidates or technologies infringe upon these patents. If any third-party patents were held by a court of competent jurisdiction to cover the manufacturing process of any of our product candidates, any molecules formed during the manufacturing process or any final product or formulation itself, the holders of any such patents may be able to block our ability to commercialize such product candidate unless we obtained a license under the applicable patents, or until such patents expire. As the biotechnology and pharmaceutical industries expand and more patents are issued, the risk increases that our product candidates or technologies may give rise to claims of infringement of the patent rights of others.

Parties making claims against us may obtain injunctive or other equitable relief, which could effectively block our ability to further practice our technologies or develop and commercialize one or more of our product candidates. Defense of these claims, regardless of their merit, would involve substantial litigation expense and would be a substantial diversion of employee resources from our business. Even if we are successful in defending against any infringement claims, litigation is expensive and time-consuming and is likely to divert management's attention and substantial resources from our core business, which could harm our business. In the event of a successful claim of infringement against us, we may have to pay substantial damages, including treble damages and attorneys' fees for willful infringement (which may include situations in which we had knowledge of an issued patent but nonetheless proceeded with activity which infringed such patent), limit our uses, pay royalties or redesign our infringing product candidates, which may be impossible or require substantial time and monetary expenditure. We may choose to seek, or may be required to seek, a license from the third-party patent holder and would most likely be required to pay license fees or royalties or both, each of which could be substantial. These licenses may not be available on commercially reasonable terms, however, or at all. Even if we were able to obtain a license, the rights we obtain may be nonexclusive, which would provide our competitors access to the same intellectual property rights upon which we are forced to rely. Furthermore, even in the absence of litigation, we may need to obtain licenses from third parties to advance our research or allow commercialization of our product candidates, and we have done so from time to time. We may fail to obtain any of these licenses at a reasonable cost or on reasonable terms, if at all. In such an event, we would be unable to further practice our technologies or develop and commercialize any of our product candidates at issue, which could harm our business significantly.

***We may not identify relevant third party patents or may incorrectly interpret the relevance, scope or expiration of a third party patent which might adversely affect our ability to develop and market our products.***

We cannot guarantee that any of our patent searches or analyses, including the identification of relevant patents, the scope of patent claims or the expiration of relevant patents, are complete or thorough, nor can we be certain that we have identified each and every third party patent and pending application in the United States and abroad that is relevant to or necessary for the commercialization of our product candidates in any jurisdiction.

The scope of a patent claim is determined by an interpretation of the law, the written disclosure in a patent and the patent's prosecution history. Our interpretation of the relevance or the scope of a patent or a pending application may be incorrect, which may negatively impact our ability to market our products. We may incorrectly determine that our products are not covered by a third party patent or may incorrectly predict whether a third party's pending application will issue with claims of relevant scope. Our determination of the expiration date of any patent in the United States or abroad that we consider relevant may be incorrect, which may negatively impact our ability to develop and market our product candidates. Our failure to identify and correctly interpret relevant patents may negatively impact our ability to develop and market our products.

We may not be successful in obtaining or maintaining necessary rights to protect our product candidates through acquisitions and in-licenses. We may find that our programs require the use of proprietary rights held by third parties or the growth of our business may depend in part on our ability to acquire, in-license or use these proprietary rights. We may be unable to acquire or in-license compositions, methods of use, processes or other third party intellectual property rights from third parties we identify as necessary for our product candidates. The licensing and acquisition of third party intellectual property rights is a competitive area, and a number of more established companies are also pursuing strategies to license or acquire third party intellectual property rights that we may consider attractive. These established companies may have a competitive advantage over us due to their size, financial resources or and greater clinical development and commercialization capabilities. In addition, companies that perceive us to be a competitor may be unwilling to assign or license rights to us. We also may be unable to license or acquire third party intellectual property rights on terms that would allow us to make an appropriate return on our investment. Even if we are able to obtain a license to intellectual property of interest, we may not be able to secure exclusive rights, in which case others could use the same rights and compete with us.

If we are unable to successfully obtain rights to required third party intellectual property rights or maintain the existing intellectual property rights we have, we may have to abandon development of that program and our business and financial condition could suffer.

Similarly, if our trade secrets are disclosed in a foreign jurisdiction, competitors worldwide could have access to our proprietary information and we may be without satisfactory recourse. Such disclosure could have a material adverse effect on our business.

***Obtaining and maintaining patent protection depends on compliance with various procedural, document submission, fee payment and other requirements imposed by governmental patent agencies, and our patent protection could be reduced or eliminated for non-compliance with these requirements.***

The PTO and various non-U.S. governmental patent agencies require compliance with a number of procedural, documentary, fee payment and other similar provisions during the patent application process. Periodic maintenance fees, renewal fees, annuity fees and various other governmental fees on patents and/or applications will be due to be paid to the PTO and various governmental patent agencies outside of the United States in several stages over the lifetime of the patents and/or applications. We employ reputable law firms and other professionals and rely on such third parties to help us comply with these requirements and effect payment of these fees with respect to the patent and patent applications that we own, and if we in-license intellectual property we may have to rely upon our licensors to comply with these requirements and effect payment of these fees with respect to any patents and patent applications that we license. In many cases, an inadvertent lapse can be cured by payment of a late fee or by other means in accordance with the applicable rules. However, there are situations in which noncompliance can result in abandonment or lapse of the patent or patent application, resulting in partial or complete loss of patent rights in the relevant jurisdiction. In such an event, our competitors might be able to enter the market and this circumstance would have a material adverse effect on our business.

***Recent patent reform legislation could increase the uncertainties and costs surrounding the prosecution of our patent applications and the enforcement or defense of our issued patents.***

On September 16, 2011, the Leahy-Smith America Invents Act (“Leahy-Smith Act”) was signed into law. The Leahy-Smith Act includes a number of significant changes to United States patent law. These include provisions that affect the way patent applications are prosecuted and may also affect patent litigation. The PTO has developed regulations and procedures to govern administration of the Leahy-Smith Act, but many of the substantive changes to patent law associated with the Leahy-Smith Act, and in particular, the first to file provisions, did not become effective until March 2013, 18 months after its enactment. Accordingly, it is not clear what, if any, impact the Leahy-Smith Act will have on the operation of our business. However, the Leahy-Smith Act and its implementation could increase the uncertainties and costs surrounding the prosecution of our patent applications and the enforcement or defense of our issued patents, all of which could have a material adverse effect on our business and financial condition.

Recent U.S. Supreme Court rulings have narrowed the scope of patent protection available in certain circumstances and weakened the rights of patent owners in certain situations. Depending on decisions by the U.S. Congress, the federal courts, and the PTO, the laws and regulations governing patents could change in unpredictable ways that would weaken our ability to obtain new patents or to enforce our existing patent and patents that we might obtain in the future.

***Intellectual property rights do not necessarily address all potential threats to our competitive advantage.***

The degree of future protection afforded by our intellectual property rights is uncertain because intellectual property rights have limitations and may not adequately protect our business or permit us to maintain our competitive advantage. The following examples are illustrative:

- others may be able to make compounds that are similar to our product candidates but that are not covered by the claims of our issued patents or any pending patent applications we may have;
- we might not have been the first to make the inventions covered by the issued patents or pending patent applications that we own;
- we might not have been the first to file patent applications covering an invention;

- others may independently develop similar or alternative technologies or duplicate any of our technologies without infringing our intellectual property rights;
- pending patent applications that we own or license may not lead to issued patents;
- the issued patents that we own or any issued patents that we license may not provide us with any competitive advantages, or may be held invalid or unenforceable, as a result of legal challenges by our competitors;
- our competitors might conduct research and development activities in countries where we do not have patent rights and then use the information learned from such activities to develop competitive products for sale in our major commercial markets;
- we may not develop or in-license additional proprietary technologies that are patentable; and
- the patents of others may have an adverse effect on our business.

Should any of these events occur, they could significantly harm our business, results of operations and prospects.

***We may be subject to claims that our employees, consultants or independent contractors have wrongfully used or disclosed confidential information of third parties or that our employees have wrongfully used or disclosed alleged trade secrets of former or other employers.***

Many of our employees and consultants, including our senior management and our scientific founders, have been employed or retained at universities or by other biotechnology or pharmaceutical companies, including potential competitors. Some of our employees and consultants, including each member of our senior management and each of our scientific founders, executed proprietary rights, non-disclosure and non-competition agreements in connection with such previous employment or retention. Although we try to ensure that our employees and consultants do not use the proprietary information or know-how of others in their work for us, we may be subject to claims that we or these employees, consultants or independent contractors have used or disclosed intellectual property, including trade secrets or other proprietary information, of any such employee's or consultant's former or other employer. We are not aware of any threatened or pending claims related to these matters or concerning the agreements with our senior management or scientific founders, but in the future litigation may be necessary to defend against such claims. If we fail in defending any such claims, in addition to paying monetary damages, we may lose valuable intellectual property rights or personnel. Even if we are successful in defending against such claims, litigation could result in substantial costs and be a distraction to management.

***We may be subject to claims challenging the inventorship or ownership of our issued patents, any patents issued as a result of our pending or future patent applications and other intellectual property.***

We may also be subject to claims that former employees, collaborators or other third parties have an ownership interest in our issued patents, any patents issued as a result of our pending or future applications or other intellectual property. For example, we work with third-party contractors in formulating and manufacturing our product candidates. While we believe we have all rights to any intellectual property related to our product candidates, a third party-contractor may claim they have ownership rights. We have had in the past, and we may also have in the future, ownership disputes arising, for example, from conflicting obligations of consultants or others who are involved in developing our product candidates and technologies. For example, some of our consultants are employees of the University of Queensland. Litigation may be necessary to defend against these and other claims challenging inventorship or ownership.

***Our reliance on third parties requires us to share our trade secrets, which increases the possibility that a competitor will discover them or that our trade secrets will be misappropriated or disclosed.***

Because we expect to rely on third parties in the development and manufacture of our product candidates, we must, at times, share trade secrets with them. We seek to protect our proprietary technology in part by entering into confidentiality agreements and, if applicable, material transfer agreements, consulting agreements or other similar agreements with our advisors, employees, third-party contractors and consultants prior to beginning research or disclosing proprietary information. These agreements typically limit the rights of the third parties to use or disclose our confidential information, including our trade secrets. Despite the contractual provisions employed when working with third parties, the need to share trade secrets and other confidential information increases the risk that such trade secrets become known by our competitors, are inadvertently incorporated into the technology of others, or are disclosed or used in violation of these agreements. Given that our proprietary position is based, in part, on our know-how and trade secrets, a competitor's discovery of our trade secrets or other unauthorized use or disclosure would impair our competitive position and may have an adverse effect on our business and results of operations.

In addition, these agreements typically restrict the ability of our advisors, employees, third-party contractors and consultants to publish data potentially relating to our trade secrets, although our agreements may contain certain limited publication rights. Despite our efforts to protect our trade secrets, our competitors may discover our trade secrets, either through breach of our agreements with third parties, independent development or publication of information by any of our third-party collaborators. A competitor's discovery of our trade secrets would impair our competitive position and have an adverse impact on our business.

***We have not yet registered trademarks for a commercial trade name for our product candidates and failure to secure such registrations could adversely affect our business.***

We have not yet registered trademarks for a commercial trade name for our product candidates. During trademark registration proceedings, we may receive rejections. Although we would be given an opportunity to respond to those rejections, we may be unable to overcome such rejections. In addition, in the PTO and in comparable agencies in many foreign jurisdictions, third parties are given an opportunity to oppose pending trademark applications and to seek to cancel registered trademarks. Opposition or cancellation proceedings may be filed against our trademarks, and our trademarks may not survive such proceedings. Moreover, any name we propose to use with our product candidates in the United States must be approved by the FDA, regardless of whether we have registered it, or applied to register it, as a trademark. The FDA typically conducts a review of proposed product names, including an evaluation of potential for confusion with other product names. If the FDA objects to any of our proposed proprietary product names, we may be required to expend significant additional resources in an effort to identify a suitable substitute name that would qualify under applicable trademark laws, not infringe the existing rights of third parties and be acceptable to the FDA.

#### **Risks Related to Ownership of our Common Stock**

***The price of our stock may be volatile, and you could lose all or part of your investment.***

The trading price of our common stock has been, and is likely to be, highly volatile and could be subject to wide fluctuations in response to various factors, some of which are beyond our control. In addition to the factors discussed in these "Risk Factors" and elsewhere in this Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, these factors include, but are not limited to:

- any delay in the commencement, enrollment and ultimate completion of clinical trials;
- actual or anticipated results in our clinical trials or those of our competitors;
- positive outcomes, or faster development results than expected, by parties developing peptide-based product candidates that are competitive with our peptide-based product candidates, as well as approval of any such competitive peptide-based product candidates;
- failure to successfully develop commercial-scale manufacturing capabilities;

## [Table of Contents](#)

- unanticipated serious safety concerns related to the use of any of our peptide-based product candidates;
- failure to secure collaboration agreements for our peptide-based product candidates or actual or perceived unfavorable terms of such agreements;
- adverse regulatory decisions;
- changes in the structure of healthcare payment systems;
- changes in laws or regulations applicable to our product candidates, including but not limited to clinical trial requirements for approvals;
- disputes or other developments relating to proprietary rights, including patents, litigation matters and our ability to obtain patent protection for our peptide-based product candidates;
- our dependence on third parties, including CROs as well as manufacturers;
- our failure to successfully commercialize any of our peptide-based product candidates, if approved;
- additions or departures of key scientific or management personnel;
- failure to meet or exceed any financial guidance or development timelines that we may provide to the public;
- actual or anticipated variations in quarterly operating results;
- failure to meet or exceed the estimates and projections of the investment community;
- overall performance of the equity markets and other factors that may be unrelated to our operating performance or the operating performance of our competitors, including changes in market valuations of similar companies;
- conditions or trends in the biotechnology and biopharmaceutical industries;
- announcements of significant acquisitions, strategic collaborations, joint ventures or capital commitments by us or our competitors;
- our ability to maintain an adequate rate of growth and manage such growth;
- issuances of debt or equity securities;
- significant lawsuits, including patent or stockholder litigation;
- sales of our common stock by us or our stockholders in the future;
- trading volume of our common stock;
- publication of research reports about us or our industry or positive or negative recommendations or withdrawal of research coverage by securities analysts;
- ineffectiveness of our internal controls;
- general political and economic conditions; and



- effects of natural or man-made catastrophic events.

In addition, the stock market in general, and The Nasdaq Global Market and biotechnology companies in particular, have experienced extreme price and volume fluctuations that have often been unrelated or disproportionate to the operating performance of these companies. Broad market and industry factors may negatively affect the market price of our common stock, regardless of our actual operating performance. The realization of any of the above risks or any of a broad range of other risks, including those described in these “Risk Factors,” could have a dramatic and material adverse impact on the market price of our common stock.

***Volatility in our share price could subject us to securities class action litigation.***

Securities class action litigations have often been brought against companies following a decline in the market price of their securities. This risk is especially relevant for us because pharmaceutical companies have experienced significant share price volatility in recent years. If we face such litigation, it could result in substantial costs and a diversion of management’s attention and resources, which could harm our business.

***Our principal stockholders and management own a significant percentage of our stock and will be able to exert significant control over matters subject to stockholder approval.***

Our executive officers, directors, holders of 5% or more of our capital stock and their respective together beneficially own a significant percentage of our stock. Therefore, these stockholders will have substantial influence and may be able to determine all matters requiring stockholder approval. For example, these stockholders may be able to control elections of directors, amendments of our organizational documents, or approval of any merger, sale of assets, or other major corporate transaction. This concentration of voting power could, among other things, delay or prevent an acquisition of our company on terms that other stockholders may desire, which in turn could depress our stock price and may prevent attempts by our stockholders to replace or remove the board of directors or management.

***Future sales of our common stock may depress our share price.***

Sales of a substantial number of shares of our common stock in the public market, or the perception that these sales might occur, could depress the market price of our common stock and could impair our ability to raise capital through the sale of additional equity securities. At June 30, 2019, we had a total of 24,967,603 shares of common stock outstanding, notwithstanding any potential exercises of outstanding options and issuance of shares under the employee stock purchase plan.

If additional shares of common stock are sold, or if it is perceived that they will be sold, in the public market, the trading price of our common stock could decline.

Any sales of securities by our stockholders could have an adverse effect on the trading price of our common stock. In addition, in the future we may issue common stock or other securities, including sales of up to \$50.0 million worth of shares of our common stock pursuant to our sales agreement with Cantor Fitzgerald & Co. (the “Sales Agreement”). The number of shares of our new common stock issued in connection with raising additional capital could constitute a material portion of our then outstanding common stock.

***If we sell shares of our common stock in future financings, stockholders may experience immediate dilution and, as a result, our stock price may decline.***

We may from time to time issue additional shares of common stock at a discount from the current trading price of our common stock. As a result, our stockholders would experience immediate dilution upon the purchase of any shares of our common stock sold at such discount. In addition, as opportunities present themselves, we may enter into financing or similar arrangements in the future, including the issuance of debt securities, preferred stock or common stock. For example, on August 6, 2018 we entered into a stock purchase agreement with investors including BVF Partners L.P., and their affiliates, pursuant to which we agreed to sell an aggregate of 2,750,000 shares of our common stock at a price of \$8.00 per share for gross proceeds of \$22.0 million. In a concurrent private placement, we issued



warrants to purchase an aggregate of 2,750,000 shares of our common stock. The exercise of some or all of the warrants will dilute the ownership interests of existing stockholders and any sales in the public market of the common stock issuable upon such exercise could adversely affect prevailing market prices of our common stock. To the extent that we raise additional capital through the sale of equity securities, including sales of up to \$50.0 million worth of shares of our common stock pursuant to our Sales Agreement with Cantor Fitzgerald & Co. (the “Sales Agreement”), or convertible debt securities, your ownership interest will be diluted, and the terms may include liquidation or other preferences that adversely affect your rights as a stockholder. If we issue common stock or securities convertible into common stock, our common stockholders would experience additional dilution and, as a result, our stock price may decline.

***We are an “emerging growth company” and as a result of the reduced disclosure and governance requirements applicable to emerging growth companies, our common stock may be less attractive to investors.***

We are an “emerging growth company” as defined in the JOBS Act, and we intend to take advantage of some of the exemptions from reporting requirements that are applicable to other public companies that are not emerging growth companies, including:

- being permitted to provide only two years of audited financial statements, in addition to any required unaudited interim financial statements, with correspondingly reduced “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations” disclosure;
- not being required to comply with the auditor attestation requirements in the assessment of our internal control over financial reporting;
- not being required to comply with any requirement that may be adopted by the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board regarding mandatory audit firm rotation or a supplement to the auditor’s report providing additional information about the audit and the financial statements;
- reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation; and
- not being required to hold a nonbinding advisory vote on executive compensation and stockholder approval of any golden parachute payments not previously approved.

We will remain an emerging growth company, and thus may continue to rely on these exemptions, until the earlier of (1) the last day of the fiscal year (a) following the fifth anniversary of the completion of the IPO, (b) in which we have total annual gross revenue of at least \$1.07 billion, or (c) in which we are deemed to be a large accelerated filer, which means the market value of our common stock that is held by non-affiliates exceeds \$700.0 million as of the prior June 30th, and (2) the date on which we have issued more than \$1.0 billion in non-convertible debt during the prior three-year period.

Under Section 107(b) of the JOBS Act, emerging growth companies can delay adopting new or revised accounting standards until such time as those standards apply to private companies. We have irrevocably elected not to avail ourselves of this exemption, and, therefore, we will be subject to the same new or revised accounting standards as other public companies that are not “emerging growth companies.”

***We have incurred and will continue to incur increased costs as a result of operating as a public company, and our management has been required and will continue to be required to devote substantial time to maintain compliance with our public company responsibilities and corporate governance practices.***

We have incurred and will continue to incur significant legal, accounting and other expenses as a public company, including costs resulting from public company reporting obligations under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “Exchange Act”), and regulations regarding corporate governance practices. The listing requirements of The Nasdaq Global Market require that we satisfy certain corporate governance requirements relating to director independence, distributing annual and interim reports, stockholder meetings, approvals and voting, soliciting proxies, conflicts of interest and a code of conduct. Our management and other personnel have devoted and will continue to

need to devote a substantial amount of time to ensure that we comply with all of these requirements. Moreover, the reporting requirements, rules and regulations will increase our legal and financial compliance costs and will make some activities more time consuming and costly. Any changes we make to comply with these obligations may not be sufficient to allow us to satisfy our obligations as a public company on a timely basis, or at all. These reporting requirements, rules and regulations, coupled with the increase in potential litigation exposure associated with being a public company, could also make it more difficult for us to attract and retain qualified persons to serve on our board of directors or board committees or to serve as executive officers, or to obtain certain types of insurance, including directors' and officers' insurance, on acceptable terms.

As a public company, and particularly after we are no longer an "emerging growth company," we will incur significant legal, accounting and other expenses that we did not incur as a private company. The Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act, the listing requirements of The Nasdaq Global Market and other applicable securities rules and regulations impose various requirements on public companies. Our management and other personnel will need to devote a substantial amount of time to compliance with these requirements. Moreover, these rules and regulations will increase our legal and financial compliance costs and will make some activities more time-consuming and costly. For example, we expect that these rules and regulations may make it more difficult and more expensive for us to obtain directors' and officers' liability insurance, which could make it more difficult for us to attract and retain qualified members of our board of directors. We cannot predict or estimate the amount of additional costs we will incur as a public company or the timing of such costs.

***We are obligated to develop and maintain proper and effective internal controls over financial reporting and any failure to maintain the adequacy of these internal controls may adversely affect investor confidence in our company and, as a result, the value of our common stock.***

We are required, pursuant to Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act (Section 404), to furnish a report by management on the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting. This assessment needs to include disclosure of any material weaknesses identified by our management in our internal control over financial reporting. Our independent registered public accounting firm will not be required to attest to the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting until our first Annual Report required to be filed with the SEC following the date we are no longer an "emerging growth company," as defined in the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012 (the "JOBS Act"). At such time as we are required to obtain auditor attestation, if we then have a material weakness, we would receive an adverse opinion regarding our internal control over financial reporting from our independent registered accounting firm.

Our compliance with Section 404 requires that we incur substantial accounting expense and expend significant management efforts. We currently do not have an internal audit group, and we will need to hire additional accounting and financial staff with appropriate public company experience and technical accounting knowledge and continue the costly and challenging process of compiling the system and processing documentation necessary to perform the evaluation needed to comply with Section 404. We may not complete our continued evaluation, testing and any required remediation in a timely fashion.

During our evaluation of our internal control, if we identify one or more material weaknesses in our internal control over financial reporting or fail to remediate our current material weaknesses, we will be unable to assert that our internal control over financial reporting is effective. We cannot assure you that there will not be material weaknesses in our internal control over financial reporting in the future. Any failure to maintain internal control over financial reporting could severely inhibit our ability to accurately report our financial condition or results of operations. If we are unable to conclude that our internal control over financial reporting is effective, or if our independent registered public accounting firm determines we have a material weakness in our internal control over financial reporting, we could lose investor confidence in the accuracy and completeness of our financial reports, the market price of our ordinary shares could decline, and we could be subject to sanctions or investigations by Nasdaq, the SEC or other regulatory authorities. Failure to remedy any material weakness in our internal control over financial reporting, or to implement or maintain other effective control systems required of public companies, could also restrict our future access to the capital markets.

***Our disclosure controls and procedures may not prevent or detect all errors or acts of fraud.***

Our disclosure controls and procedures are designed to reasonably assure that information required to be disclosed by us in reports we file or submit under the Exchange Act is accumulated and communicated to management, recorded, processed, summarized and reported within the time periods specified in the rules and forms of the SEC. We believe that any disclosure controls and procedures or internal controls and procedures, no matter how well conceived and operated, can provide only reasonable, not absolute, assurance that the objectives of the control system are met.

These inherent limitations include the realities that judgments in decision-making can be faulty, and that breakdowns can occur because of simple error or mistake. Additionally, controls can be circumvented by the individual acts of some persons, by collusion of two or more people or by an unauthorized override of the controls. Accordingly, because of the inherent limitations in our control system, misstatements due to error or fraud may occur and not be detected.

During the course of our review and testing, we may identify deficiencies and be unable to remediate them before we must provide the required reports. Furthermore, we may not detect errors on a timely basis and our financial statements may be materially misstated. We or our independent registered public accounting firm may not be able to conclude on an ongoing basis that we have effective internal control over financial reporting, which could harm our operating results, cause investors to lose confidence in our reported financial information and cause the trading price of our stock to fall. In addition, as a public company we are required to file accurate and timely Quarterly and Annual Reports with the SEC under the Exchange Act. Any failure to report our financial results on an accurate and timely basis could result in sanctions, lawsuits, delisting of our shares from The Nasdaq Global Market or other adverse consequences that would materially harm our business.

***Any changes to existing accounting pronouncements or taxation rules or practices may cause adverse fluctuations in our reported results of operations or affect how we conduct our business.***

A change in accounting pronouncements or taxation rules or practices can have a significant effect on our reported results and may affect our reporting of transactions completed before the change is effective. New accounting pronouncements, taxation rules and varying interpretations of accounting pronouncements or taxation rules have occurred in the past and may occur in the future. The change to existing rules, future changes, if any, or the need for us to modify a current tax or accounting position may adversely affect our reported financial results or the way we conduct our business.

***Nasdaq may delist our securities from its exchange, which could limit investors' ability to make transactions in our securities and subject us to additional trading restrictions.***

Our common stock is listed on The Nasdaq Global Market. We cannot assure you that, in the future, our securities will meet the continued listing requirements to be listed on The Nasdaq Global Market. If The Nasdaq Global Market delists our common stock, we could face significant material adverse consequences, including:

- a limited availability of market quotations for our securities;
- a determination that our common stock is a "penny stock" which will require brokers trading in our common stock to adhere to more stringent rules and possibly resulting in a reduced level of trading activity in the secondary trading market for our common stock;
- a limited amount of news and analyst coverage for our company; and
- a decreased ability to issue additional securities or obtain additional financing in the future.

***If securities or industry analysts do not publish research or publish inaccurate or unfavorable research about our business, our stock price and trading volume could decline.***

The trading market for our common stock will be influenced by the research and reports that securities or industry analysts publish about us or our business. In the event one or more of the analysts who cover us downgrade our stock or publish inaccurate or unfavorable research about our business, our stock price could be adversely affected. If one or more of these analysts cease coverage of our company or fail to publish reports on us regularly, demand for our common stock could decrease, and we could lose visibility in the financial markets, which might cause our stock price and trading volume to decline.

***Claims for indemnification by our directors and officers may reduce our available funds to satisfy successful third party claims against us and may reduce the amount of money available to us generally.***

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation provides that we will indemnify our directors and officers, in each case to the fullest extent permitted by Delaware law.

In addition, as permitted by Section 145 of the Delaware General Corporation Law, our amended and restated bylaws and our indemnification agreements that we have entered into and will enter into with our directors and officers provide that:

- we will indemnify our directors and officers for serving us in those capacities or for serving other business enterprises at our request, to the fullest extent permitted by Delaware law. Delaware law provides that a corporation may indemnify such person if such person acted in good faith and in a manner such person reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the registrant and, with respect to any criminal proceeding, had no reasonable cause to believe such person's conduct was unlawful;
- we may, in our discretion, indemnify employees and agents in those circumstances where indemnification is permitted by applicable law;
- we are required to advance expenses, as incurred, to our directors and officers in connection with defending a proceeding, except that such directors or officers shall undertake to repay such advances if it is ultimately determined that such person is not entitled to indemnification;
- we will not be obligated pursuant to our bylaws to indemnify a person with respect to proceedings initiated by that person against us or our other indemnitees, except with respect to proceedings authorized by our board of directors or brought to enforce a right to indemnification;
- the rights conferred in our bylaws are not exclusive, and we are authorized to enter into indemnification agreements with our directors, officers, employees and agents and to obtain insurance to indemnify such persons; and
- we may not retroactively amend our bylaw provisions to reduce our indemnification obligations to directors, officers, employees and agents.

As a result, if we are required to indemnify one or more of our directors or executive officers, it may reduce our available funds to satisfy successful third party claims against us, may reduce the amount of money available to us and may have a material adverse effect on our business and financial condition.

***Because we do not anticipate paying any cash dividends on our common stock in the foreseeable future, capital appreciation, if any, would be your sole source of gain.***

We have never declared or paid any cash dividends on our common stock. We currently anticipate that we will retain future earnings for the development, operation and expansion of our business and do not anticipate declaring or

paying any cash dividends for the foreseeable future. As a result, capital appreciation, if any, of our common stock would be your sole source of gain on an investment in our common stock for the foreseeable future.

***Provisions in our corporate charter documents could make an acquisition of us more difficult and may prevent attempts by our stockholders to replace or remove our current management.***

Provisions in our certificate of incorporation and our bylaws may discourage, delay or prevent a merger, acquisition or other change in control of us that stockholders may consider favorable, including transactions in which stockholders might otherwise receive a premium for their shares. These provisions could also limit the price that investors might be willing to pay in the future for shares of our common stock, thereby depressing the market price of our common stock. In addition, these provisions may frustrate or prevent any attempts by our stockholders to replace or remove our current management by making it more difficult for stockholders to replace members of our board of directors. Because our board of directors is responsible for appointing the members of our management team, these provisions could in turn affect any attempt by our stockholders to replace current members of our management team.

***Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation provides that the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware is the exclusive forum for substantially all disputes between us and our stockholders, which could limit our stockholders' ability to obtain a favorable judicial forum for disputes with us or our directors, officers or employees.***

Our amended and restated certificate of incorporation provides that the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware will be the exclusive forum for any derivative action or proceeding brought on our behalf; any action asserting a breach of fiduciary duty; any action asserting a claim against us arising pursuant to the Delaware General Corporation Law, our amended and restated certificate of incorporation or our bylaws; or any action asserting a claim against us that is governed by the internal affairs doctrine. The choice of forum provision may limit a stockholder's ability to bring a claim in a judicial forum that it finds favorable for disputes with us or our directors, officers or other employees, which may discourage such lawsuits against us and our directors, officers and other employees. Alternatively, if a court were to find the choice of forum provision contained in our amended and restated certificate of incorporation to be inapplicable or unenforceable in an action, we may incur additional costs associated with resolving such action in other jurisdictions, which could adversely affect our business and financial condition.

***Our board of directors has certain characteristics which may delay or prevent a change of our management or a change in control.***

Our board of directors has the following characteristics which may delay or prevent a change of management or a change in control:

- our board of directors has the right to elect directors to fill a vacancy created by the expansion of the board of directors or the resignation, death or removal of a director, which prevents stockholders from being able to fill vacancies on our board of directors;
- our stockholders may not act by written consent or call special stockholders' meetings; as a result, a holder, or holders, controlling a majority of our capital stock would not be able to take certain actions other than at annual stockholders' meetings or special stockholders' meetings called by the board of directors, the chairman of the board or the chief executive officer;
- our certificate of incorporation does not provide for cumulative voting in the election of directors, which limits the ability of minority stockholders to elect director candidates;
- stockholders must provide advance notice and additional disclosures in order to nominate individuals for election to the board of directors or to propose matters that can be acted upon at a stockholders' meeting, which may discourage or deter a potential acquirer from conducting a solicitation of proxies to elect the acquirer's own slate of directors or otherwise attempting to obtain control of our company; and

- our board of directors may issue, without stockholder approval, shares of undesignated preferred stock; the ability to issue undesignated preferred stock makes it possible for our board of directors to issue preferred stock with voting or other rights or preferences that could impede the success of any attempt to acquire us.

***The recently passed comprehensive tax reform bill could adversely affect our business and financial condition.***

In December 2017, the Tax Act was enacted which significantly changes the Internal Revenue Code, as amended (the “Code”). The Tax Act, among other things, contains significant changes to corporate taxation, including reduction of the corporate tax rate from a top marginal rate of 35% to a flat rate of 21%; limitation of the tax deduction for interest expense to 30% of adjusted earnings; for net operating losses generated after 2017, limitation of the deduction to 80% of current year taxable income, indefinite carryforward of net operating losses and elimination of net operating loss carrybacks; changes in the treatment of offshore earnings regardless of whether they are repatriated; mandatory capitalization of research and development expenses beginning in 2022; immediate deductions for certain new investments instead of deductions for depreciation expense over time; further deduction limits on executive compensation; and modifying, repealing and creating many other business deductions and credits, including the reduction in the orphan drug credit from 50% to 25% of qualifying expenditures. We continue to examine the impact this tax reform legislation may have on our business. Notwithstanding the reduction in the corporate income tax rate, the overall impact of the Tax Act is uncertain and our business and financial condition could be adversely affected. The impact of this tax reform on holders of our common stock is also uncertain and could be adverse. This quarterly report does not discuss any such tax legislation or the manner in which it might affect us or our stockholders in the future. We urge our stockholders to consult with their legal and tax advisors with respect to such legislation.

***Our ability to utilize our net operating loss carryforwards and certain other tax attributes may be limited.***

We have incurred substantial losses during our history. We do not anticipate generating revenue from sales of products for the foreseeable future, if ever, and we may never achieve profitability. To the extent that we continue to generate taxable losses, unused losses will carry forward to offset future taxable income, if any, until such unused losses expire. Under Section 382 of the Code, if a corporation undergoes an “ownership change” (generally defined as a greater than 50 percentage points change (by value) in its equity ownership over a rolling three-year period), the corporation’s ability to use its pre-change net operating loss carryforwards and other pre-change tax attributes to offset its post-change income may be limited. Based on a review of our equity transactions since inception, we believe a portion of our net operating loss carryforwards and credit carryforwards may be limited due to certain of our equity financing transactions. We may experience ownership changes in the future or subsequent shifts in our stock ownership, some of which are outside our control. As of December 31, 2018, we had federal net operating loss carryforwards of approximately \$109.1 million that could be limited if we have experienced, or if in the future we experience, an ownership change, which could have an adverse effect on our future results of operations.

***We may have additional tax liabilities.***

Our effective income tax rate in the future could be adversely affected by a number of factors, including: interpretations of existing tax laws, changes in tax laws and rates, future levels of research and development expenditures, changes in the valuation of deferred tax assets and liabilities, our ability to use some or all of our accumulated net operating losses, changes in accounting standards and other items. The impact of our income tax provision resulting from these items may be significant and could have a negative impact on our net operating results. We are also subject to non-income based taxes, such as payroll, sales, use, property, and goods and services taxes in the United States. We may have additional exposure to non-income based tax liabilities.

We are regularly subject to audits by tax authorities in the jurisdictions in which we conduct business. Although we believe our tax positions are reasonable, the final outcome of tax audits and related litigation could be materially different than that reflected in our historical income tax provisions and accruals, and we could be subject to assessments of additional taxes and/or substantial fines or penalties. The resolution of any audits or litigation could have an adverse effect on our financial position and results of operations. We and our subsidiary are engaged in intercompany transactions, the terms and conditions of which may be scrutinized by tax authorities, which could result in additional tax and/or penalties becoming due.

***Provisions under Delaware law and California law could make an acquisition of our company more difficult, limit attempts by our stockholders to replace or remove our current management and limit the market price of our common stock.***

Because we are incorporated in Delaware, we are governed by the provisions of Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law, which generally prohibits a Delaware corporation from engaging in any of a broad range of business combinations with any holder of at least 15% of our capital stock for a period of three years following the date on which the stockholder acquired at least 15% of our common stock. Likewise, because our principal executive offices are located in California, the anti-takeover provisions of the California Corporations Code may apply to us under certain circumstances now or in the future.

## **ITEM 2. UNREGISTERED SALES OF EQUITY SECURITIES AND USE OF PROCEEDS**

### ***Recent Sales of Unregistered Securities***

None.

### ***Repurchases of Shares or of Company Equity Securities***

None.

## **ITEM 3. DEFAULTS UPON SENIOR SECURITIES**

None.

## **ITEM 4. MINE SAFETY DISCLOSURES**

Not applicable.

## **ITEM 5. OTHER INFORMATION**

None.

## **ITEM 6. EXHIBITS**

**EXHIBIT INDEX**

<b>Exhibit Number</b>	<b>Exhibit Description</b>	<b>Incorporation By Reference</b>			
		<b>Form</b>	<b>SEC File No.</b>	<b>Exhibit</b>	<b>Filing Date</b>
3.1	<a href="#">Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation</a>	8-K	001-3785237852	3.1	8/16/2016
3.2	<a href="#">Amended and Restated Bylaws</a>	S-1/A	333-212476	3.2	8/1/2016
4.1	<a href="#">Specimen stock certificate evidencing the shares of common stock</a>	S-1/A	333-212476	4.1	8/1/2016
4.2	<a href="#">Amended and Restated Investor Rights Agreement, by and among Protagonist Therapeutics, Inc. and the stockholders named therein, dated July 10, 2015.</a>	S-1/A	333-212476	4.2	8/1/2016
4.3	<a href="#">Form of Class A Common Stock Purchase Warrant</a>	8-K	001-37852	4.1	8/7/2018
4.4	<a href="#">Form of Class B Common Stock Purchase Warrant</a>	8-K	001-37852	4.2	8/7/2018
10.1+#	<a href="#">First Amendment to Exclusive License and Collaboration Agreement, by and between Protagonist Therapeutics, Inc. and Janssen Biotech, Inc., dated May 7, 2019.</a>				
10.2*	<a href="#">Separation Agreement, by and between Protagonist Therapeutics, Inc. and Richard S. Shames, dated May 7, 2019.</a>	8-K	001-37852	10.1	5/13/2019
10.3*	<a href="#">Offer Letter, by and between Protagonist Therapeutics Inc. and Donald Kalkofen, dated May 20, 2019.</a>	8-K	001-37852	10.1	5/29/2019
31.1+	<a href="#">Certification of Chief Executive Officer required by Rule 13a-14(a) or Rule 15d-14(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as adopted pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002</a>				
31.2+	<a href="#">Certification of Chief Financial Officer required by Rule 13a-14(a) or Rule 15d-14(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as adopted pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002</a>				
32.1+**	<a href="#">Certification of Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, as required by Rule 13a-14(b) or Rule 15d-14(b) and Section 1350 of Chapter 63 of Title 18 of the United States Code (18 U.S.C. §1350), as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002</a>				
101.INS+	XBRL Instance Document				
101.SCH+	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Schema Document				
101.CAL+	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Calculation Linkbase Document				
101.DEF+	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Definition Linkbase Document				



## [Table of Contents](#)

101.LAB+	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Labels Linkbase Document
101.PRE+	XBRL Taxonomy Extension Presentation Linkbase Document

---

+ Filed herewith

# Portions of this exhibit (indicated by asterisks) have been omitted as the registrant has determined that (i) the omitted information is not material and (ii) the omitted information would likely cause competitive harm to the registrant if publicly disclosed.

\* Indicates a management contract or compensatory plan or arrangement.

\*\* This certification attached as Exhibit 32.1 that accompanies this Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q is not deemed filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission and is not to be incorporated by reference into any filing of Protagonist Therapeutics, Inc. under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, whether made before or after the date of the Form 10-Q, irrespective of any general incorporation language contained in such filing.

## SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized.

PROTAGONIST THERAPEUTICS, INC.

Date: August 7, 2019

By: /s/ Dinesh V. Patel, Ph.D.  
Dinesh V. Patel, Ph.D.  
President, Chief Executive Officer and Director  
(Principal Executive Officer)

Date: August 7, 2019

By: /s/ Don Kalkofen  
Don Kalkofen  
Chief Financial Officer  
(Principal Financial and Accounting Officer)



[\*] = Certain confidential information contained in this document, marked by brackets, is omitted because it is both (i) not material and (ii) would be competitively harmful if publicly disclosed.

## FIRST AMENDMENT

### TO THE LICENSE AND COLLABORATION AGREEMENT

This Amendment (the “**First Amendment**”) is made and entered into as of May 7, 2019 (the “**First Amendment Effective Date**”) by and between (i) Protagonist Therapeutics, Inc., a Delaware corporation (“**Protagonist**”) and (ii) Janssen Biotech, Inc., a company organized under the laws of the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania (“**Janssen**”). Protagonist and Janssen are referred to collectively herein as the “**Parties**.”

### WHEREAS

- A. Protagonist and Janssen entered into a License and Collaboration Agreement effective as of May 26, 2017 (the “**Agreement**”) relating to the collaboration of the Parties in the development and commercialization of certain Licensed Products (as defined therein).
- B. Protagonist and Janssen desire to amend the terms of the Agreement.

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the various provisions set forth herein, and other good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which is hereby acknowledged, the Parties hereby agree as follows:

#### I. Interpretation.

Capitalized terms used herein and not otherwise defined shall have the meaning set forth in the Agreement.

#### II. Definitions

The following definitions are added to Article 1:

“**2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Activity Threshold**” means, with respect to a 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Compound, that such 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Compound:

[\*]

“**2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Compound**” means any cyclic peptide other than the Initial Compound that is (a) disclosed by any Protagonist IL23 Receptor Inhibitor Patent Right, or (b) is

discovered and/or developed by either or both of the Parties pursuant to the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan and, in both of cases (a) and (b):

(i) has an IC50 value of less than or equal to [\*] nanomolar (i.e., [\*]), as determined in the [\*] described in Exhibit C; or

(ii) has an affinity for IL23R less than or equal to [\*]pM (i.e., [\*]), as determined by [\*].

“**2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan**” means the Parties’ written plan for the discovery, research and pre-clinical and clinical Development of 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Products during the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Term, as such plan may be amended from time to time pursuant to Section 3.2.2, including the budget and timelines described in Section 3.2.1(b). The initial 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan (as relates to Research Activities) is attached to Exhibit H to this Amendment.

“**2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Term**” means, provided that at least one Development Candidate has been selected by the JSC prior to expiration of the Research Term, the period beginning on the date of selection of the first Development Candidate and ending on:

(a) If Janssen makes the Second Opt-In Election on or prior to [\*], the [\*]; and

(b) If Janssen makes the Second Opt-In Election after [\*], the [\*].

“**2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product**” means a Licensed Product containing a 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Compound.

“**Development Budget**” means the budget set forth in the approved Clinical Development Plan, 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan or CMC Development Plan, as applicable, in each case for the Phase 2 Activities.

“**Development Candidate**” means a 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Compound that has been selected by the JSC during the Research Term for pre-clinical and clinical Development under the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan.

“**Development Candidate Selection Date**” means the date that the JSC selects the first Development Candidate.

“**Development Costs**” has the meaning set forth in Section 7.2.4.

“**Development Plan**” means the Clinical Development Plan or the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan, as applicable.

“**Funded Research Term**” has the meaning set forth in Section 3.9.3(a).

“ **Initial Compound API Cost** ” means Janssen’s reasonable, attributable and necessary internal costs and reasonable, documented Third Party costs incurred in manufacturing or acquisition and supply of Compound API for the Initial Compound for commercial purposes, determined in accordance with Janssen’s accounting policies that are in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles and consistently applied across such Janssen’s commercial manufacturing supply network to other products that Janssen or one of its Affiliates manufactures.

“ **Initial Funding Term** ” has the meaning set forth in Section 3.9.3(b).

“ **Janssen Phase 1 Clinical Trial** ” means, with respect to a 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product, a Phase 1 Clinical Trial to be conducted by Janssen or its Affiliates [\*] (or [\*], as agreed by the Parties in writing). Each Janssen Phase 1 Clinical Trial shall be included in the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan.

“ **Phase 1 CMC Development Costs** ” means the Collaboration CMC Costs incurred by a Party or any of its Affiliates with respect to the Collaboration CMC Activities for the Phase 1 Activities.

“ **Phase 1 Development Costs** ” means (a) Phase 1 Out-of-Pocket Costs and Expenses and (b) Phase 1 FTE Costs.

“ **Phase 1 Development FTE** ” means [\*] hours of work devoted to or in direct support of the Phase 1 Activities under this Agreement by one or more qualified scientific, medical, manufacturing, technical and other employees, contractors or consultants of a Party or its Affiliates, as measured in accordance with such Party’s normal time allocation practices, *provided* that such employees, contractors or consultants shall not include personnel performing administrative and corporate functions (including human resources, finance, legal and investor relations).

“ **Phase 1 FTE Costs** ” means, with respect to any period, the FTE Rate multiplied by the number of Phase 1 Development FTEs expended by a Party or any of its Affiliates during such period in the performance of Phase 1 Activities under this Agreement or the preparing, filing and maintaining of Regulatory Documentation (such as INDs and CTAs) for Licensed Products in support of Phase 1 Activities under this Agreement.

“ **Phase 1 Out-of-Pocket Costs and Expenses** ” means amounts paid by either Party or any of its Affiliates (a) to Third Party vendors or contractors for services or materials provided by them directly in the performance of Phase 1 Activities under this Agreement, to the extent such services or materials apply directly to such Phase 1 Activities, or the preparing, filing and maintaining of Regulatory Documentation (such as INDs and CTAs) for Licensed Products in support of Phase 1 Activities under this Agreement or (b) to the FDA or other Regulatory Authorities for filing fees for such Regulatory Documentation.

“ **Phase 2 Activities** ” means (a) with respect to the Initial Product, the CD Phase 2 Clinical Trial and any other Phase 2 Clinical Trial, and any related Development activities, set forth in the Clinical Development Plan, and (b) with respect to the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Products, the CD Phase 2 Clinical Trial and any other Phase 2 Clinical Trial, and any related Development activities, set forth in the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan.

“ **Protagonist Research Compound** ” means any compound arising from Protagonist’s performance of the Research Activities that is not a 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Compound.

“ **Protagonist Research FTE** ” means [\*] hours of work devoted to or in direct support of the Research Activities under this Agreement by one or more qualified scientific, medical, manufacturing, technical and other employees, contractors or consultants of Protagonist or its Affiliates, as measured in accordance with Protagonist’s normal time allocation practices, *provided* that such employees, contractors or consultants shall not include personnel performing administrative and corporate functions (including human resources, finance, legal and investor relations).

“ **Protagonist Research FTE Rate** ” means a rate of [\*] per FTE per Calendar Year for Research Activities; *provided, however*, that such rate shall be increased or decreased annually beginning on [\*] by the percentage increase or decrease in the CPI between the last day of the most recently completed Calendar Year and December 31, 2019, plus [\*] percent ([\*]%). The FTE Rate is “fully burdened” and will cover employee salaries and such facilities and equipment and other materials and services, including ordinary laboratory consumables procured from distributors of relevant products as they may use.

“ **Research Activities** ” means the discovery and research activities for 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Products set forth in the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan.

“ **Research Plan** ” means the portion of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan directed to the Research Activities.

“ **Research Term** ” has the meaning set forth in Section 3.9.3(a).

Section 1.10 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

1.10. “ **CD Phase 2 Clinical Trial** ” means:

(a) with respect to the Initial Product, the first to be completed of (i) the Phase 2 Clinical Trial of the Initial Product for CD set forth in the initial Clinical Development Plan, which includes both a Phase 2A portion and Phase 2B portion, or (ii) the first Phase 2 Clinical Trial (including the Phase 2 portion of a Phase 2/3 Clinical Trial, if applicable) of the Initial Product for CD conducted under the Clinical Development Plan, provided that if the first Phase 2 Clinical Trial of the Initial Product for CD conducted under the Clinical Development Plan is a stand-alone Phase 2A Clinical Trial (as so designated in the protocol), then the CD Phase 2 Clinical Trial for the Initial Product shall also include the next Phase 2 Clinical Trial of the Initial Product for CD conducted under the Clinical

Development Plan (including the Phase 2 portion of a Phase 2/3 Clinical Trial, if applicable); and

(b) with respect to 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Products, the first to be completed Phase 2 Clinical Trial (including the Phase 2 portion of a Phase 2/3 Clinical Trial, if applicable, or stand-alone Phase 2B Clinical Trial) of a 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product for CD conducted under the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan; provided that if such Phase 2 Clinical Trial is a stand-alone Phase 2A Clinical Trial (as so designated in the protocol), then the CD Phase 2 Clinical Trial for the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Products shall also include the next Phase 2 Clinical Trial for such 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product (or a replacement 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product) conducted under the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan (including the Phase 2 portion of a Phase 2/3 Clinical Trial, if applicable) which is intended to identify an appropriate dose of such 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product for use in Phase 3 Clinical Trials.

For clarity, each CD Phase 2 Clinical Trial (a) if consisting of a Phase 2/3 Clinical Trial shall include an interim analysis to be conducted immediately following the Phase 2 portion thereof, and (c) shall be deemed completed as of the Phase 2B Completion Date therefor.

Section 1.16 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

1.16. “**CMC Development Plan**” means the Parties’ written plan for CMC Development and Manufacturing of the Initial Compound and Initial Product and 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Compound(s) and 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product(s) during the applicable Development Term, as amended from time to time pursuant to Section 3.2.2, including the budget and timelines described in Section 3.2.1(b). The initial CMC Development Plan is attached as Exhibit B to the Agreement.

Section 1.17 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

1.17. “**Collaboration Activities**” means, collectively, the Research Activities, the Phase 1 Activities, Phase 2 Activities and Collaboration CMC Activities.

Section 1.20 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

1.20. “**Collaboration Information**” means: (a) the Clinical Development Plan, 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan and CMC Development Plan; (b) the JSC minutes prepared in accordance with Section 2.1.4(b) and the Collaboration Records; (c) the reports delivered by the Parties pursuant to Section 3.6.4; (d) all data and results arising from and during the conduct of the Research Activities under this Agreement directly relating to the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Compounds, including all reports delivered by the Parties pursuant to Section 3.9.7; (e) the Phase 1 Data Packages, Phase 2A Results, Phase 2 Data Packages and any final clinical study reports for the Phase 1 Clinical Trial of the Initial Product set forth in the Development Plan, any Phase 1 Clinical Trial of a 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product set forth in the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan or a CD Phase 2 Clinical Trial; and (f) non-public Collaboration Know-How and non-public Collaboration Patent Rights.



Section 1.33 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

1.33 “ **Development Term** ” means

- (a) with respect to the Initial Compound, the period beginning on the Effective Date and ending on:
  - (i) If Janssen makes the Second Opt-In Election on or prior to [\*], the [\*]; and
  - (ii) If Janssen makes the Second Opt-In Election after [\*], the [\*]; and
- (b) with respect to the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Compounds, the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Term.

Section 1.34 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

1.34. “ **Diligent Efforts** ” means, with respect to any Party’s performance of the Research Activities during the Research Term or the Collaboration Activities during the Development Term, the carrying out of such activities in a prompt and timely manner using reasonable, good faith efforts and adequate and appropriate resources.

Section 1.62 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

1.62 “ **Licensed Compound** ” means PTG-200, a GI-targeted peptide with local IL23 receptor antagonist effect, as further described on Schedule 1.62 (the “ **Initial Compound** ”), or a 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Compound.

Section 1.63 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

1.63 “ **Licensed Product** ” means any pharmaceutical product or formulation containing the Initial Compound or a 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Compound.

Section 1.78 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

1.78. “ **Phase 1 Activities** ” means (i) the Phase 1 Clinical Trial of the Initial Product set forth in the initial Clinical Development Plan, (ii) any Phase 1 Clinical Trial for a 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product set forth in the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan, and (iii) any related Development activities (including pre-clinical and IND-enabling studies) set forth in the Clinical Development Plan for the Initial Product or 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan for a 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product.

Section 1.80 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

1.80. “ **Phase 1 Completion Date** ” means the date of database lock for (a) the Phase 1 Clinical Trial for the Initial Product set forth in the initial Clinical Development Plan, or (ii) the first Phase 1 Clinical Trial for a 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product.

Section 1.91 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

1.91. “ **Phase 2A Activities** ” means the Phase 2A portion of a CD Phase 2 Clinical Trial (whether a stand-alone Phase 2A Clinical Trial or part of a larger Clinical Trial), and any related Development activities set forth in the Clinical Development Plan.

Section 1.92 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

1.92. “ **Phase 2A Completion Date** ” means the date of database lock for the Phase 2A portion of a CD Phase 2 Clinical Trial (whether a stand-alone Phase 2A Clinical Trial or part of a larger Clinical Trial) after the last patient in such Clinical Trial completes the last visit as described in the protocol for such Clinical Trial. For clarity, recruitment for the Phase 2B portion of a CD Phase 2 Clinical Trial may commence before the Phase 2A Completion Date.

Section 1.94 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

1.94. “ **Phase 2B Completion Date** ” means the date of database lock for the Phase 2B portion of a CD Phase 2 Clinical Trial after the last patient in such Clinical Trial completes the last visit as described in the protocol for such Clinical Trial or, if such CD Phase 2 Clinical Trial is a Phase 2/3 or Phase 2b/3 Clinical Trial, the date that Janssen completes its interim analysis of the Phase 2 or Phase 2b portion, as applicable, of such Clinical Trial.

Section 1.108 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

1.108. “ **Retained Compound** ” means any peptide that is disclosed by any Protagonist IL23 Receptor Inhibitor Patent Rights and that:

- (a) has an IC50 value of greater than [\*] nanomolar (nM), as determined in the [\*] described in Exhibit C; and
- (b) has an affinity for IL23R greater than [\*]nM, as determined in the [\*] .

### **III. Governance**

Section 2.1.1 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

#### **2.1.1. Formation, Composition and Term of JSC.**

- (a) Within [\*] after the Effective Date, the Parties will establish a joint steering committee (the “ **JSC** ”) to oversee and coordinate the Parties’ activities during the Research Term and respective Development Terms including, without limitation, determining whether to pursue Development of the Initial Compound

and Initial Product and/or one or more 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Compounds and 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Products, and, following the end of the Development Term for the Initial Product or the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Products, as applicable, to serve solely as an information sharing body in accordance with Section 5.3.2 for the respective Licensed Product for which the Development Term has terminated.

(b) The JSC initially shall be composed of [\*] members, [\*] of whom shall be representatives appointed by Protagonist and [\*] of whom shall be representatives appointed by Janssen, each with the requisite experience and seniority to enable such representative to make decisions on behalf of the Parties with respect to the issues falling within the jurisdiction of the JSC. Neither Party shall appoint any representative to the JSC that is not an employee of such Party or one of its Affiliates without the prior written consent of the other Party, which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. Each Party shall appoint one (1) of its representatives as co-chairperson of the JSC. The size of the JSC may be changed from time to time by written agreement of the Parties, *provided* that the JSC shall at all times include an equal number of representatives of each Party. Each Party may replace its JSC representatives at any time upon written notice to the other Party.

(c) After the Development Term has expired for a Licensed Product, the JSC shall have no oversight or decision-making authority with respect to such Licensed Product and shall serve solely as an information-sharing body with respect to such Licensed Product in accordance with Section 5.3.2. The JSC shall automatically dissolve when Janssen has no further reporting obligations under Section 5.3.2 (or such later time as agreed by the Parties).

Section 2.1.2 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

#### 2.1.2 Subcommittees.

(a) The Parties shall establish a Joint Manufacturing Committee (“**JMC**”) promptly after establishing the JSC. The purpose of the JMC will be to oversee and coordinate the Parties’ performance of the Collaboration CMC Activities during the Development Term, to share information and facilitate the performance and execution of such activities, and to review and discuss potential changes to the CMC Development Plan and to Third Party manufacturers of clinical supplies for the Phase 1 Activities and Phase 2 Activities.

(b) The Parties shall establish a Joint Research Committee (“**JRC**”) promptly after the Amendment Effective Date, with each Party designating [\*] representatives to serve on the JRC. The purpose of the JRC will be to oversee and coordinate the Parties’ performance of the Research Activities during the Research Term, to share information and facilitate the performance and execution of such activities, and to review and discuss potential changes to the Research Plan.

(c) The JSC may, as necessary or appropriate and agreed to by the JSC, establish other subcommittees and delegate tasks within its authority as expressly provided for hereunder to such subcommittees (the JMC and each other subcommittee, a “**Subcommittee**”). Each Subcommittee shall operate in the same manner as the JSC, as described in Section 2.1.4, *provided* that no Subcommittee shall have any decision-making authority, but shall instead make recommendations to the JSC with respect to such matters within its authority.

(d) All Subcommittees shall automatically dissolve upon the end of the Development Term (or such later time as agreed by the Parties).

Section 2.1.3 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

2.1.3. **Responsibilities of the JSC** . The JSC shall oversee the Research Activities during the Research Term and the Collaboration Activities during the Development Term. In particular, the JSC shall:

- (a) create the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan and review and approve proposed amendments to the Development Plans (including the corresponding Development Budget) in accordance with Section 3.2.2;
- (b) review and discuss the results of the Research Activities and determine whether to select one or more Development Candidates;
- (c) review and discuss the results of the Collaboration Activities;
- (d) decide matters presented to it by any Subcommittee, in each case, that is within the scope of responsibilities delegated to the respective Subcommittee under this Agreement or by the JSC; and
- (e) perform such other functions as expressly set forth in this Agreement or as mutually agreed upon by the Parties in writing.

Section 2.1.4(c) is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

(c) *Decision-Making.*

(1) The JSC shall make decisions and take action (A) by consensus of the members present at a meeting at which a quorum exists, with each Party ensuring that its representatives make such decisions in good faith, and having a single vote irrespective of the number of representatives of such Party in attendance, or (B) by a written resolution signed by at least both co-chairpersons appointed by each Party.

(2) If the JSC does not reach consensus on any matter within its authority (a “**Deadlocked Matter**”) within a period of [\*] (or such other period as the Parties may agree in writing) after it has met and attempted to reach such consensus, then either Party may, by written notice to the other Party, refer the Deadlocked Matter

to the Executive Officers; *provided, however*, that, if the Executive Officers do not reach agreement on such Deadlocked Matter within [\*] after such Deadlocked Matter is referred to the Executive Officers, then, subject to Section 2.1.4(c)(3):

- (i) Protagonist shall have the final decision-making right with respect to any Deadlocked Matter to the extent it relates to [\*], except that, irrespective of [\*], Janssen shall have the final decision-making right with respect to [\*] and to the extent [\*], which decision shall be final and binding on the Parties;
- (ii) Janssen shall have the final decision-making right with respect to any Deadlocked Matter to the extent it relates to [\*] (other than as described in Section 2.1.4(c)(2)(i) above) and/or [\*], which decision shall be final and binding on the Parties; *provided, however*, that Janssen may not exercise its final decision-making authority under this Section 2.1.4(c)(2)(ii) to (A) make any Fundamental Development Plan Change [\*] without Protagonist's consent, which shall not be unreasonably withheld, delayed or conditioned, unless [\*], or (B) decrease the number of Protagonist Research FTEs performing Research Activities under the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan below [\*] during the Initial Funding Term, or below [\*] following the Initial Funding Term (subject to [\*]), without Protagonist's consent, which shall not be unreasonably withheld, delayed or conditioned;
- (iii) Janssen shall have the final decision-making right with respect to any Deadlocked Matter to the extent it relates to [\*] (other than as described in Section 2.1.4(c)(2)(i) above), which decision shall be final and binding on the Parties except that Janssen may not exercise its final decision-making authority under this Section 2.1.4(c)(2)(iii) to [\*], without Protagonist's consent, which shall not be unreasonably withheld, delayed or conditioned; and
- (iv) Neither Party shall have the final decision-making right with respect to any Deadlocked Matter, including the right to effect any Fundamental Development Plan Change, except as described in Sections 2.1.4(c)(2)(i), (ii) and (iii), and in such event the matter shall remain deadlocked and the status quo shall persist unless and until the Parties reach agreement on such matter; provided, however, that, to the extent the Deadlocked Matter is with respect to a Fundamental Development Plan Change, the Parties shall proceed under the then-current Plan (including the then-current Development Budget) having last been approved by both Parties.

For purposes of this Section, “**Fundamental Development Plan Change**” means any of the following changes with respect to a then-current Development Plan having last been approved by both Parties: (i) [\*] and (ii) [\*], (A) a change to [\*] the Phase 2A Clinical Trial ([\*]), or (B) removal or modification of the [\*] for such Phase 2A Clinical Trial, unless [\*], such change is necessary (1) [\*], (2) [\*] or (3) [\*].

(3) Neither Party may exercise its final decision-making authority under Section 2.1.4(c)(2) with respect to a Deadlocked Matter to: (i) require or cause the other Party to take any action in violation of Applicable Law or that, in such other Party's reasonable determination, is a risk to patients or clinical trial subjects or is otherwise contrary to GCP and ethics or such other Party's compliance policies; or (ii) require or cause the other Party to bear any costs other than those set forth in then-current applicable Development Budget or to commit additional FTE resources to conduct Research Activities or Collaboration Activities, except as specified in Section 2.1.4(c)(ii); or (iii) alter Sections 3.3.1, 3.4.1, 3.4.3, 3.9.2 or 5.3.1 or any requirement to use Commercially Reasonable Efforts or Diligent Efforts.

Section 2.1.6 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

**2.1.6. Discontinuation of the JSC.** The activities to be performed by the JSC and its Subcommittees shall solely relate to governance under this Agreement, and are not intended to be or involve the delivery of services. The JSC and each Subcommittee shall continue to exist as provided in Section 2.1.1(c) or Section 2.1.2(c), as applicable, unless before such time the Parties mutually agree to disband such committee or Protagonist provides written notice to Janssen of its intention to disband and no longer participate in such committee. Once the Parties mutually agree to disband a committee or Protagonist has provided written notice to disband a committee, such committee shall have no further obligations under this Agreement and, thereafter, each Party shall designate a contact person for the exchange of information under this Agreement or such exchange of information shall be made through the Alliance Managers. In the event a committee is disbanded as provided in this Section 2.1.6, any decisions that are designated under this Agreement as being subject to the review or approval of such committee shall be made by mutual agreement of the Parties directly (other than any matter that was subject to the final decision-making authority of Janssen under Section 2.1.4(c)(2)(ii) or 2.1.4(c)(2)(iii), which shall thereafter be made by Janssen directly), subject to the other terms and conditions of this Agreement.

#### **IV. Activities During Research Term and Development Term**

The Title of Article 3 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

### **Article 3**

#### **ACTIVITIES DURING RESEARCH TERM AND DEVELOPMENT TERM**

Section 3.1 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

##### **3.1. General; 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan .**

(a) **General.** During the Development Term, the Parties shall conduct the Collaboration Activities in accordance with this Article 3.

(b) **2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan.**

- (i) For the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Compound and 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product, the Parties shall perform the discovery and Development activities according to the 2nd Generation Development Plan.
- (ii) From time to time during the Research Term and 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Term, as applicable, either Party may submit proposed amendments to the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan to the JSC for review and approval. The JSC shall consider each such proposed amendment at its next scheduled meeting. If the JSC approves such proposed amendment in accordance with Section 2.1.4(c), the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan shall be deemed amended to reflect such amendment and such amended 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan shall become effective and supersede the previous 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan as applicable, as of the date of such approval. If the JSC does not approve such proposed amendment, such matter shall be subject to escalation as described in Section 2.1.4(c).

The title to Section 3.2 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

**3.2. Clinical Development Plan; 2nd Generation Development Plan; CMC Development Plan .**

Section 3.2.1 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

**3.2.1. Contents .**

- (a) The updated Clinical Development Plan shall contain all Development activities (other than CMC Development activities) necessary to complete Development of the Initial Product for CD through the end of Phase 2. The Clinical Development Plan shall include a reasonably detailed description of such activities, a timeline for completion of such activities and the deliverables for such activities. The Clinical Development Plan shall include a budget for the Phase 2 Activities broken down by activity and by Calendar Year (the “**Phase 2 Development Budget**”). The initial Phase 2 Development Budget shall be approved by the JSC and shall be consistent with the Summary of the Phase 2 Clinical and CMC Development Budget attached to this Amendment as Exhibit D. The JSC shall review and update the Phase 2 Development Budget in accordance with Section 3.2.2 not less frequently than [\*] for the subsequent Calendar Year prior to [\*] of the current year, until the completion of the Phase 2 Activities hereunder for the Initial Product.
- (b) The 2nd Generation Development Plan shall contain all discovery and Development activities (other than CMC Development activities) necessary to discover

[\*] = Certain confidential information contained in this document, marked by brackets, is omitted because it is both (i) not material and (ii) would be competitively harmful if publicly disclosed.

---

and identify 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Compounds and complete Development of a 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product for CD through the end of Phase 2. The 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan shall include a reasonably detailed description of such activities, a timeline for completion of such activities and the deliverables for such activities. The 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan shall include a budget for the Research Activities, Phase 1 Activities and Phase 2 Activities broken down by activity and by Calendar Year (the “**2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Budget**”). The initial 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Budget shall be approved by the JSC. The JSC shall review and update the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Budget in accordance with Section 3.2.2 not less frequently than [\*] for the subsequent Calendar Year prior to [\*] of the current year, until the completion of the Phase 2 Activities hereunder for the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Products.

(c) The CMC Development Plan shall at contain the following CMC Development and Manufacturing activities with respect to the Initial Compound and Initial Product at all times and, with respect to the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Compounds and 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Products, at all times following selection of the first Development Candidate:

- (1) Compound API production and release testing for the conduct of the Phase 1 Activities, Phase 2 Activities, API stability, API optimization studies, and for formulation development studies for Phase 1, Phase 2 and Phase 3 use;
- (2) Compound API solution phase synthesis process development;
- (3) Drug Product capsule development, production, and release testing, packaging and labeling for the Phase 1 Activities and Phase 2 Activities;
- (4) Drug Product tablet development for the Phase 2 Activities and/or Phase 3 Clinical Trials; and
- (5) Drug Product tablet production, and release testing, packaging and labeling, for the Phase 2 Activities.

The CMC Development Plan may also include other CMC Development activities with respect to the Licensed Compounds and Licensed Products mutually agreed upon by the Parties. The CMC Development Plan shall include a reasonably detailed description of the activities set forth therein, a timeline for completion of such activities and the deliverables for such activities. The CMC Development Plan shall include a budget for the Collaboration CMC Activities for the Phase 1 Activities and Phase 2 Activities, broken down by activity and by Calendar Year (the “**CMC Development Budget**”). The initial CMC Development Budget for Phase 2 Activities for the Initial Product shall be approved by the JSC and shall be consistent with the Summary of the Phase 2 Clinical and CMC Development Budget attached to the Agreement as Exhibit D.

Section 3.2.2 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

**3.2.2. Amendments** . From time to time during a Development Term, either Party may submit proposed amendments to the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan or Clinical Development Plan to the JSC for review and approval, and either Party or the JMC may

[\*] = Certain confidential information contained in this document, marked by brackets, is omitted because it is both (i) not material and (ii) would be competitively harmful if publicly disclosed.

---



submit proposed amendments to the CMC Development Plan to the JSC for review and approval. The JSC shall consider each such proposed amendment at its next scheduled meeting. If the JSC approves such proposed amendment in accordance with Section 2.1.4(c), the applicable Development Plan shall be deemed amended to reflect such amendment and such amended Development Plan shall become effective and supersede the previous such Development Plan as of the date of such approval. If the JSC does not approve such proposed amendment, such matter shall be subject to escalation as described in Section 2.1.4(c).

Section 3.3.1 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

**3.3.1. Responsibility; Diligence.**

- (a) Protagonist shall be solely responsible for conducting the Phase 1 Activities for the Phase 1 Clinical Trial set forth in the Clinical Development Plan (which Clinical Trial has been completed as of the First Amendment Effective Date), [\*] Phase 1 Clinical Trial for [\*] 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Products set forth in the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan and, if Protagonist agrees in writing to [\*] any further Phase 1 Activities for [\*] 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Products set forth in the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan, such further Phase 1 Activities. Janssen shall be solely responsible for conducting any Janssen Phase 1 Clinical Trials. The costs of such Phase 1 Activities shall be borne in accordance with Section 7.2.
- (b) The Party with the responsibility for such Phase 1 Activities under the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan shall use Diligent Efforts to conduct and complete the Phase 1 Activities in accordance with the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan (including the timeline set forth therein). Protagonist shall have day-to-day operational control over the conduct of the Phase 1 Activities.
- (c) The Party with the responsibility for such Phase 1 Activities under the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan shall perform the Phase 1 Activities in accordance with the terms and conditions of this Agreement, in good scientific manner and in compliance with Applicable Law, including, as applicable, those relating to GLP, GCP, GMP, pharmacovigilance and safety reporting, and requirements for the protection of human subjects.

Section 3.3.3 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

**3.3.3. Evaluation of Data Package; Decision to Proceed to Phase 2 Activities** . Following Janssen's receipt of a complete Phase 1 Data Package pursuant to Section 3.3.2, the JSC shall meet to discuss such Phase 1 Data Package and determine whether the results from the Phase 1 Activities support continuation of preparation and conduct of a CD Phase 2 Clinical Trial and related Phase 2 Activities. As of the Amendment Effective Date, the parties have agreed that the results from the Phase 1 Activities for the Initial Product support continuation of preparation and conduct of a CD Phase 2 Clinical Trial for the Initial Product and related Phase 2 Activities. If Janssen or Protagonist has reasonably determined that there is a Material Safety Issue with respect to the results of

the Phase 1 Activities, Janssen or Protagonist shall describe such safety issue in detail during such JSC meeting. The JSC shall also discuss whether any amendments to the Phase 2 Activities in the applicable Development Plan should be made due to the results from the Phase 1 Activities and/or to address Material Safety Issues raised by either Party, and any such amendments shall be approved by the JSC in accordance with Section 3.2.2.

Section 3.3.4 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

**3.3.4. Clinical Study Report .** As of the First Amendment Effective Date, Protagonist has delivered to Janssen the clinical study report and Phase 1 Data Package for the Phase 1 Clinical Trial of the Initial Product set forth in the Clinical Development Plan. Protagonist shall use Diligent Efforts to complete the clinical study report for the Phase 1 Clinical Trial of the first 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product set forth in the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan as promptly as is practicable following the delivery of the Phase 1 Data Package therefor, and shall deliver such clinical study report to Janssen promptly following its completion (and, in any event, no later than [\*] after the Phase 1 Completion Date for such 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product).

Section 3.4.1 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

**3.4.1. Commencement of Phase 2 Activities .**

(a) Janssen shall file the Phase 2 IND for the Initial Product within approximately [\*] following the First Amendment Effective Date.

(b) With respect to 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Products, if, following delivery of the Phase 1 Data Package for a 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product, the JSC determines pursuant to Section 3.3.3 that the results from the Phase 1 Activities support continuation of preparation and conduct of the CD Phase 2 Clinical Trial and related Phase 2 Activities, Protagonist shall use Diligent Efforts to provide to Janssen all data and information relating to the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Compound and 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product necessary to prepare the INDs and CTAs for the CD Phase 2 Clinical Trial for such 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product as soon as practicable after such JSC determination. Janssen shall use Diligent Efforts to prepare and submit such INDs and CTAs to the applicable Regulatory Authorities after Protagonist provides such necessary data and information. The Parties will use Diligent Efforts to complete such activities within [\*] after the date on which the JSC (or Protagonist, as the case may be) makes such determination, and in any event Janssen shall file the Phase 2 IND for such 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product within [\*] of the Phase 1 Completion Date for such 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product, it being understood that any delay in Protagonist's delivery to Janssen of the necessary data and information as required above will result in a day for day increase to such time period.

(c) Janssen shall use Diligent Efforts to initiate study site recruitment for each CD Phase 2 Clinical Trial within [\*] after submission of the applicable Phase 2 IND, provided that there are no delays caused by the action of a Regulatory

Authority, and thereafter shall use Diligent Efforts to continue such recruitment and conduct and complete such trial in accordance with the applicable Development Plan, subject to Section 3.8. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if a Regulatory Authority requests or requires any changes to the Phase 2 Activities following submission of an IND or CTA in accordance with Section 3.4.1(a), (i) the JSC shall develop and approve an amendment to the Development Plan to address such request or requirement in accordance with Section 3.2.2 and (ii) Janssen shall have no obligation to commence the CD Phase 2 Clinical Trial until the JSC approves such amendment.

Section 3.4.3 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

**3.4.3. Responsibility; Diligence .**

(a) Janssen shall be solely responsible for conducting the Phase 2 Activities. The costs and expenses of the Phase 2 Activities shall be shared by the Parties in accordance with Section 7.2. Janssen shall use Diligent Efforts to conduct and complete the Phase 2 Activities in accordance with the applicable Development Plan (including the timeline set forth therein). Janssen shall have day-to-day operational control over the conduct of the Phase 2 Activities. For clarity, it shall not be a breach of this Section 3.4.3 for Janssen to cease Developing the Initial Product provided that: (i) the Research Term is ongoing and Janssen is fulfilling its obligations under Section 3.9.6, or (ii) if the Research Term has terminated or expired, a Development Candidate has been selected and Janssen is fulfilling its obligations under this Section 3.4.3 with respect to a 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product.

(b) Janssen shall perform the Phase 2 Activities in accordance with the terms and conditions of this Agreement, in good scientific manner and in compliance with Applicable Law, including, as applicable, those relating to GLP, GCP, GMP, pharmacovigilance and safety reporting, and requirements for the protection of human subjects.

(c) Protagonist shall transfer to Janssen, upon Janssen's request, sufficient rights in, to or under, all INDs, CTAs, safety databases and other Regulatory Documentation with respect to the Licensed Compounds and Licensed Products then held by Protagonist, its Affiliates and Third Party Subcontractors as reasonably necessary or useful to conduct Phase 2 Activities.

Section 3.4.4 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

**3.4.4. Janssen Opt-In following Completion of the Phase 2A Activities for Initial Product .** Following the Phase 2A Completion Date for the Initial Product, Janssen shall conduct an analysis of the Phase 2A Results in accordance with the Clinical Development Plan and determine whether to make the First Opt-In Election in accordance with Section 4.1. If Janssen makes the First Opt-In Election in accordance with Section 4.1.2, this Agreement shall continue in full force and effect as further described in Section 4.1.3. If Janssen does not make the First Opt-In Election in accordance with Section 4.1.2 for the

Initial Product, then Janssen shall have no right to conduct any further Development of the Initial Compound or the Initial Product unless and until Janssen has paid to Protagonist the Milestone Payment for Milestone Event C or an equivalent payment. For clarity, Janssen shall continue to conduct the Phase 2 Activities in accordance with the Clinical Development Plan while Janssen performs such analysis and makes its determination with respect to the First Opt-In Election.

Section 3.4.5 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

**3.4.5. Janssen Opt-In following Completion of the Phase 2B Activities** . Following the Phase 2B Completion Date, Janssen shall determine whether to make the Second Opt-In Election in accordance with Section 4.2. If Janssen makes the Second Opt-In Election in accordance with Section 4.2.2, then this Agreement shall continue in full force and effect as further described in Section 4.2.3. If Janssen does not make the Second Opt-In Election in accordance with Section 4.2.2 for the Initial Product or a 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product, then this Agreement shall terminate in accordance with Section 4.2.4.

Section 3.5.4(a) is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

(a) Protagonist shall be responsible for the costs and expenses incurred with respect to Collaboration CMC Activities for the Phase 1 Activities, and shall reimburse Janssen for any such costs and expenses incurred by Janssen or any of its Affiliates, in each case in accordance with Section 7.2;

Section 3.6.2 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

### **3.6.2 Subcontracting**

(a) Each Party may subcontract the performance of any Collaboration Activities to any of its Affiliates or any Third Party without prior written notice to the other Party (except as required pursuant to JSC sharing of information), *provided* that such Party shall oversee the performance by its Affiliates and Third Party Subcontractors in a manner that would be reasonably expected to result in their timely completion and shall remain responsible for the performance of such activities in accordance with this Agreement. Notwithstanding the foregoing, any Third Party Subcontractor to be used by the Conducting Party to perform any Collaboration CMC Activities for the Phase 1 Activities or Phase 2 Activities must be approved in advance by the other Party, which approval shall not be unreasonably withheld. An initial list of Protagonist's Third Party subcontractors as of the Effective Date is set forth in Schedule 3.6.2. Following the Effective Date, the JSC, upon recommendation of the JMC, may amend Schedule 3.6.2 to add or remove subcontractors.

(b) With respect to any Collaboration Activities to be subcontracted to a Third Party (a “**Third Party Subcontractor**”) by Protagonist or by Janssen pursuant to a subcontracting agreement with a Third Party that is first entered into after the Effective Date: (A) each such arrangement will be set forth in a written contract

[\*] = Certain confidential information contained in this document, marked by brackets, is omitted because it is both (i) not material and (ii) would be competitively harmful if publicly disclosed.

---

with such Third Party Subcontractor; and (B) each such contract shall be consistent with the terms and conditions of this Agreement and shall include (i) restrictions on the use and disclosure of Confidential Information of the other Party and (ii) an assignment to the applicable Party entering into such contract (the “ **Subcontracting Party** ”) of all rights to any and all results of the activities undertaken and other intellectual property made, invented or generated by such Third Party Subcontractor with respect to the Licensed Compounds or Licensed Products.

(c) A Subcontracting Party will notify the other Party of the engagement or retention of any Third Party Subcontractor to conduct any Collaboration Activities outside the ordinary course of business and, upon the request of such other Party, provide such other Party with a copy of the relevant contract (which may be redacted with respect to financial terms) to ensure compliance with the provisions of this Section 3.6.2.

Section 3.8 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

**3.8. Material Safety Issues .**

3.8.1. If, during the Development Term, either Party determines that there is a Material Safety Issue, such Party shall promptly notify the other Party and the JSC shall promptly meet to discuss such Material Safety Issue and to seek to approve an appropriate course of action to address such Material Safety Issue (which may include delaying, modifying, suspending or terminating one or more of the Collaboration Activities). During the pendency of such discussion, each Party may suspend or delay any Collaboration Activity allocated to it under a Development Plan to the extent such activity is affected by such Material Safety Issue. If the JSC approves a course of action to address such Material Safety Issue, then the Parties shall thereafter take all actions necessary to implement such course of action. If the JSC does not approve a course of action to address such Material Safety Issue within [\*] after becoming aware of such Material Safety Issue, then either Party may refer such matter to the Executive Officers for discussion and attempted resolution. If the Executive Officers approve a course of action to address such Material Safety Issue, then the Parties shall thereafter take all actions necessary to implement such course of action. If the Executive Officers do not approve a course of action to address such Material Safety Issue within [\*] after the matter is referred to them, then, Janssen shall have the final decision-making authority to determine the appropriate course of action to address such Material Safety Issue and Janssen’s decision shall be final and binding on the Parties, subject to the limitations set forth in Section 2.1.4(c)(3); *provided , however ,* Janssen may not exercise its final decision-making authority to require Protagonist to commence or continue any Collaboration Activity if Protagonist determines, in good faith, that such Collaboration Activity should not be commenced or continued due to such Material Safety Issue and in such instance Janssen would have the right to authorize a clinical research organization to conduct the particular activity on behalf of Protagonist, at Janssen’s sole cost.

---

[\*] = Certain confidential information contained in this document, marked by brackets, is omitted because it is both (i) not material and (ii) would be competitively harmful if publicly disclosed.

3.8.2. If (a) a Material Safety Issue arises after the commencement of a CD Phase 2 Clinical Trial, (b) such Material Safety Issue is not resolved by the Parties after completing the process set forth in Section 3.8.1, (c) such Material Safety Issue has existed for more than [\*], (d) Janssen has not used Diligent Efforts to resolve such Material Safety Issue, and (e) as of such time, the Research Term has expired and (i) such Material Safety Issue applies to each Licensed Compound or Licensed Product that is specifically the subject of then-ongoing or preparation for Phase 1 Activities or Phase 2 Activities or (ii) there are no other Licensed Compounds or Licensed Products (other than the Licensed Product that was the subject of such CD Phase 2 Clinical Trial) that are specifically the subject of then-ongoing or preparation for Phase 1 Activities or Phase 2 Activities, then Protagonist's obligations and restrictions under Section 6.7 shall expire on the first date that all conditions set forth in clauses (a) through (d) are satisfied and Section 6.7 shall be of no further force or effect after such date.

A new Section 3.9 is added to the Agreement as follows:

3.9. **Conduct of Research Activities**

3.9.1. **Generally.** During the Research Term, the Parties shall conduct the Research Activities in accordance with this Section 3.9.

3.9.2. **Responsibility; Diligence .**

- (a) Each Party shall use Diligent Efforts to conduct and complete the Research Activities in accordance with the Research Plan (including the timeline set forth therein). Protagonist shall have primary responsibility for the conduct of the Research Activities during the Funded Research Term (as defined below).
- (b) Each Party shall perform the Research Activities in accordance with the terms and conditions of this Agreement, in good scientific manner and in compliance with Applicable Law.
- (c) Except as set forth in Section 3.9.3, each Party shall bear its own costs incurred in its conduct of the Research Activities.

3.9.3. **Funding of Protagonist Research FTEs .**

- (a) “ **Research Term** ” means the Funded Research Term and the [\*] period immediately following the Funded Research Term. “ **Funded Research Term** ” means the period commencing on the Amendment Effective Date and ending the [\*], as may be terminated earlier pursuant to subsection (c) below.
- (b) Janssen shall fund [\*] Protagonist Research FTEs at the Protagonist Research FTE Rate during the initial [\*] of the Funded Research Term (the “ **Initial Funding Term** ”). After the Initial Funding Term, for the remainder of

the Funded Research Term, Janssen shall fund at least [\*] Protagonist Research FTEs, to be agreed by the Parties in writing at the Protagonist Research FTE Rate. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if the Parties have not agreed in writing on a number of Protagonist Research FTEs as of the end of the Initial Funding Term, then Janssen shall continue to fund [\*] Protagonist Research FTEs at the Protagonist Research FTE Rate during the Funded Research Term until such time as the Parties agree in writing on an alternative number of Protagonist Research FTEs.

(c) Janssen may terminate the Funded Research Term by providing Protagonist with at least [\*] prior written notice, provided that no such termination shall be effective until after the expiration of the Initial Funding Term.

(d) Promptly following the end of the first Calendar Quarter following the First Amendment Effective Date, Protagonist shall submit an invoice to Janssen for the Protagonist Research FTEs actually utilized for Research Activities during the prior Calendar Quarter (pro-rated for the final Calendar Quarter, if applicable). Such invoices, if undisputed, shall be payable by Janssen in accordance with Section 7.6 (i) within [\*] after receipt or, (ii) if disputed by Janssen, within [\*] after resolution of such dispute and, if such dispute is resolved against Protagonist, receipt of a correct invoice.

**3.9.4. No Development Candidate Selection** . If the JSC has not selected a Development Candidate as of the date of expiration or earlier termination of the Research Term, or such later date as the Parties may agree in writing (which extension shall not be subject to Janssen's final decision-making right under Section 2.1.4(c)(2)), then:

- (a) All licenses, rights and options granted to Janssen hereunder, and all obligations of Protagonist hereunder other than pursuant to Section 6.7, in each case with respect to all 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Compounds and 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Products, shall terminate.
- (b) Protagonist shall solely and exclusively own all right, title and interest in and to all 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Compounds discovered and/or Developed by either or both of the Parties pursuant to the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan, subject to Section 6.7 and Janssen's rights under Section 6.1.1 with respect to Licensed Compounds and Licensed Products not discovered and/or Developed by either or both of the Parties pursuant to the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan. Janssen hereby assigns, and shall cause its Affiliates to assign, to Protagonist all Collaboration Know-How and Collaboration Inventions arising from the Research Activities that solely relate to the composition and/or methods of use of one or more 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Compounds discovered and/or Developed by either or both of the Parties pursuant to the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan and do not relate to other aspects of the Licensed Compounds (collectively, "2<sup>nd</sup>

**Generation Compound IP**”). The 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Compound IP shall be deemed to be Protagonist’s Confidential Information, and Protagonist shall be deemed to be the Disclosing Party and Janssen shall be deemed to be the Receiving Party with respect to such Confidential Information. Janssen shall take, and shall cause its Affiliates to take, such actions as Protagonist may reasonable request to evidence and perfect such ownership, at Protagonist’s expense. Notwithstanding the foregoing, nothing in this Section 3.9.4 shall alter Janssen’s rights under Article 8 with respect to Licensed Compounds and Licensed Products not discovered and/or developed by either or both of the Parties pursuant to the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan. Janssen hereby grants to Protagonist, on behalf of Janssen and its Affiliates, subject to Section 6.7, a non-exclusive, perpetual, irrevocable, royalty-free, freely sublicensable through multiple tiers, transferable license under the Janssen Collaboration Know-How, Janssen Collaboration Patent Rights and Janssen’s interest in the Joint Collaboration Patent Rights related to any 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Compound, excluding in each case the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Compound IP, solely to the extent necessary to Develop, make, have made, use, have used, sell, have sold, offer for sale, have offered for sale, import, have imported, and otherwise exploit, Manufacture and Commercialize 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Compounds and 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Products in the Territory.

- (c) If as of such time, the First Opt-In Period has expired and Janssen has not provided Protagonist with a First Opt-In Election Notice on or prior to the expiration of the First Opt-In Period, or if Janssen provided a First Opt-In Election Notice on or prior to the expiration of the First Opt-In Period but did not pay the Opt-In Maintenance Fee within [\*] after receipt of an invoice from Protagonist pursuant to Section 4.1.3(a), then this Agreement shall terminate in its entirety without any further action on the part of either Party and Section 12.6 shall apply.

**3.9.5. Reports .** During the Research Term:

- (a) each Party shall provide updates on its progress with respect to the conduct of the Research Activities, and a summary of the data and results from such activities, at each meeting of the JSC;
- (b) in addition to any such reports made to the JSC, each Party shall make its employees and consultants available for an in-person or telephonic meeting with the other Party at least once every Calendar Quarter to discuss its progress with respect to the conduct of the Research Activities; and
- (c) each Party shall provide the other Party with access to the data and results from the Research Activities upon such other Party’s reasonable request.

**3.9.6. Protagonist Research Compounds .** Protagonist shall solely and exclusively own all right, title and interest in and to all Protagonist Research Compounds, subject



to Section 6.7. Janssen hereby assigns, and shall cause its Affiliates to assign, to Protagonist all Collaboration Know-How and Collaboration Inventions arising from the Research Activities that solely relate to the composition of one or more Protagonist Research Compounds and do not relate to (i) other aspects of the Protagonist Research Compounds or (ii) any 2nd Generation Compound (collectively, “**Research Compound IP**”). The Research Compound IP shall be deemed to be Protagonist’s Confidential Information, and Protagonist shall be deemed to be the Disclosing Party and Janssen shall be deemed to be the Receiving Party with respect to such Confidential Information. Janssen shall take, and shall cause its Affiliates to take, such actions as Protagonist may reasonable request to evidence and perfect such ownership, at Protagonist’s expense. Janssen hereby grants to Protagonist, on behalf of Janssen and its Affiliates, subject to Section 6.7, a non-exclusive, perpetual, irrevocable, royalty-free, freely sublicensable through multiple tiers, transferable license under the Janssen Collaboration Know-How, Janssen Collaboration Patent Rights and Janssen’s interest in the Joint Collaboration Patent Rights related to any Protagonist Research Compound, excluding in each case the Research Compound IP, solely to the extent necessary to Develop, make, have made, use, have used, sell, have sold, offer for sale, have offered for sale, import, have imported, and otherwise exploit, Manufacture and Commercialize Protagonist Research Compounds and products containing Protagonist Research Compounds in the Territory.

## V. Opt-In Rights

Article 4 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

### Article 4

#### OPT-IN RIGHTS

##### 4.1. First Opt-In.

4.1.1. **Delivery of Phase 2A Results** . Janssen shall deliver to Protagonist the top-line results from the Phase 2A Activities for the Initial Product within [\*] after they become available to Janssen, which results shall include the primary and second endpoint, as well as available safety and exposure data, from the analysis cohort (the “**Phase 2A Results**”).

4.1.2. **First Opt-In Election** . Janssen may, at its sole discretion, elect to maintain its rights under this Agreement to advance the Initial Product into Phase 2B Activities through the expiration of the Second Opt-In Period by providing Protagonist with a written notice of such election (the “**First Opt-In Election Notice**”) at any time during the period beginning on the Effective Date and ending [\*] after (i) the Phase 2A Completion Date for the Initial Product and (ii) Janssen’s receipt of topline results from such CD Phase 2A Clinical Trial; *provided, however*, that if Janssen is stayed from making such election after the Phase 2A Completion Date for the Initial Product by the filing of a petition by Protagonist under the Bankruptcy Code or otherwise, such period shall expire on the date that is [\*] after the lifting or expiration of such stay (the “**First Opt-In**”).

[\*] = Certain confidential information contained in this document, marked by brackets, is omitted because it is both (i) not material and (ii) would be competitively harmful if publicly disclosed.

---

**Period**”). If Janssen provides a First Opt-In Election Notice on or prior to the expiration of the First Opt-In Period, Janssen shall be deemed to have made the “ **First Opt-In Election** ” on the date that the First Opt-In Election Notice is deemed given in accordance with Section 14.10.

**4.1.3. Effect of First Opt-In Election .** If Janssen makes the First Opt-In Election, then the provisions of this Section 4.1.3 shall apply.

(a) Protagonist shall invoice Janssen for, and Janssen shall pay to Protagonist within [\*] after receipt of such invoice, a one-time, non-creditable, non-refundable fee equal to fifty million dollars (\$50,000,000) (the “ **Opt-In Maintenance Fee** ”); and

(b) Janssen shall maintain its right to advance the Initial Product into Phase 2B Activities until the expiration of the Second Opt-In Period, unless earlier terminated in accordance with Article 12.

**4.1.4. Effect of Failure to Make the First Opt-In Election .**

(a) If Janssen does not provide a First Opt-In Election Notice on or prior to the expiration of the First Opt-In Period, Janssen shall no longer have the right to advance the Initial Product into Phase 2B Activities, a Phase 3 Clinical Trial or otherwise conduct any further Development of the Initial Product or the Initial Compound (unless and until it pays Protagonist the Milestone Payment for Milestone Event C or an equivalent payment) upon the expiration of the First Opt-In Period without any further action on the part of either Party.

(b) If Janssen provides a First Opt-In Election Notice on or prior to the expiration of the First Opt-In Period but does not pay the Opt-In Maintenance Fee within [\*] after receipt of an invoice from Protagonist pursuant to Section 4.1.3(a) for the Initial Product, then Janssen shall no longer have the right to advance the Initial Product into Phase 2B Activities, a Phase 3 Clinical Trial or otherwise conduct any further Development of the Initial Product or the Initial Compound (unless and until it pays Protagonist the Milestone Payment for Milestone Event C or an equivalent payment) upon the day immediately after the last day of such [\*] period without any further action on the part of either Party.

(c) Notwithstanding Sections 4.1.4(a) and (b), if Janssen does not provide a First Opt-In Election Notice on or prior to the expiration of the First Opt-In Period, or if Janssen provides a First Opt-In Election Notice on or prior to the expiration of the First Opt-In Period but does not pay the Opt-In Maintenance Fee within [\*] after receipt of an invoice from Protagonist pursuant to Section 4.1.3(a) for the Initial Product, and as of such time the Research Term has expired or terminated and no

Development Candidate has been selected in accordance with Section 3.9.6, then this Agreement shall terminate in its entirety upon the expiration of the Second Opt-In Period without any further action on the part of either Party and Section 12.6 shall apply.

#### 4.2. Second Opt-In.

4.2.1. **Delivery of Phase 2 Data Package** . If Janssen has paid the Opt-In Maintenance Fee, then [\*] following (a) the Phase 2B Completion Date with respect to the Initial Product and (b) Janssen's receipt of topline results from such CD Phase 2 Clinical Trial, Janssen shall deliver to Protagonist a data package with respect to the Phase 2 Activities for the Initial Product. For the first 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product, within [\*] following (x) the Phase 2B Completion Date with respect to the first 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product and (y) Janssen's receipt of topline results from such CD Phase 2 Clinical Trial, Janssen shall deliver to Protagonist a data package with respect to the Phase 2 Activities for such 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product. As used herein, a "**Phase 2 Data Package**" means a data package that contains: (i) a high level summary of the available results from the Phase 2 Activities; and (ii) all available safety and efficacy analyses conducted with respect to the Data relating to the Licensed Compounds and Licensed Products generated by or on behalf of Janssen in the course of performing the Phase 2 Activities.

4.2.2. **Second Opt-In Election** . Janssen may, at its sole discretion, elect to maintain its rights under this Agreement beyond the Second Opt-In Period by providing Protagonist with a written notice of such election (the "**Second Opt-In Election Notice**") at any time during the period beginning on the date on which it timely pays the Opt-In Maintenance Fee and ending [\*] after the Phase 2B Completion Date for either the Initial Product (but only if Janssen has paid the Opt-In Maintenance Fee) or first 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product; *provided, however*, that if Janssen is stayed from making such election after the Phase 2B Completion Date by the filing of a petition by Protagonist under the Bankruptcy Code or otherwise, such period shall expire on the date that is [\*] after the lifting or expiration of such stay (the "**Second Opt-In Period**"). If Janssen provides a Second Opt-In Election Notice on or prior to the expiration of the Second Opt-In Period, Janssen shall be deemed to have made the "**Second Opt-In Election**" on the date that the Second Opt-In Election Notice is deemed given in accordance with Section 14.10. For clarity, (a) if Janssen has paid the Opt-In Maintenance Fee but does not make the Second Opt-In Election for the Initial Product, and provided that a Development Candidate has been selected pursuant to Section 3.9.6 or the Research Term has not expired or terminated, then the Second Opt-In Period shall continue until the date ending [\*] after the Phase 2B Completion Date for the first 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product; (b) if Janssen has paid the Opt-In Maintenance Fee but does not make the Second Opt-In Election for the Initial Product within the Second Opt-In Period and no Development Candidate has been selected pursuant to Section 3.9.6 as of such time and the Research Term has

expired or terminated, then the Second Opt-In Period shall expire; and (c) if Janssen has paid the Opt-In Maintenance Fee but does not make the Second Opt-In Election for the Initial Product within the Second Opt-In Period and as of such time the Research Term has not expired or terminated, and the Research Term thereafter expires or terminates without a Development Candidate being selected pursuant to Section 3.9.6, then the Second Opt-In Period shall expire contemporaneously with the expiration or termination of the Research Term.

**4.2.3. Effect of Second Opt-In Election .** If Janssen makes the Second Opt-In Election, then the provisions of this Section 4.2.3 shall apply.

- (a) Protagonist shall invoice Janssen for, and Janssen shall pay to Protagonist within [\*] after receipt of such invoice, a one-time, non-creditable, non-refundable fee equal to fifty million dollars (\$50,000,000) (the “**Opt-In Exercise Fee**”);
- (b) Article 5 shall take effect on the Opt-In Effective Date; and
- (c) the restriction set forth in Section 6.1.2 shall terminate on the Opt-In Effective Date; and
- (d) the License Term shall commence on the Opt-In Effective Date and this Agreement shall remain in full force and effect until the expiration of the Term, unless earlier terminated in accordance with Article 12. For clarity, once the Opt-In Exercise Fee has been paid for a Licensed Product, whether the Initial Product or a 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product, no additional Opt-In Exercise Fee will be owed for any other Licensed Product; provided that if Janssen did not pay the Opt-In Maintenance Fee, then Janssen shall have no rights to advance the Initial Product into Phase 2B Activities, a Phase 3 Clinical Trial or otherwise conduct any further Development of the Initial Product or the Initial Compound unless and until it pays Protagonist the Milestone Payment for Milestone Event C or an equivalent payment.

**4.2.4. Effect of Failure to Make the Second Opt-In Election .**

- (a) If Janssen does not provide a Second Opt-In Election Notice on or prior to the expiration of the Second Opt-In Period for the Initial Product or 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product, if and as applicable, then this Agreement shall terminate in its entirety upon the expiration of the Second Opt-In Period without any further action on the part of either Party and Section 12.6 shall apply.
- (b) If Janssen provides a Second Opt-In Election Notice on or prior to the expiration of the Second Opt-In Period but does not pay the Opt-In Exercise Fee for the Initial Product or 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product within [\*]

after receipt of an invoice from Protagonist pursuant to Section 4.2.3(a) for such Licensed Product, then this Agreement shall terminate upon the expiration of the day immediately after the Second Opt-In Period last day of such [\*] period without any further action on the part of either Party and Section 12.6 shall apply.

## **VI. Activities During License Term**

Section 5.1 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

### **5.1. General .**

5.1.1. This Article 5 shall take effect on the start of the License Term.

5.1.2. During the License Term, Janssen shall conduct Development, Manufacture and Commercialization of the Licensed Compounds and Licensed Products in accordance with this Article 5.

Section 5.2.1 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

5.2.1. To facilitate an orderly transition of the Development and Manufacture of the Licensed Compounds and Licensed Products from Protagonist to Janssen:

(a) promptly following the start of the License Term, Protagonist shall transfer to Janssen, and hereby assigns to Janssen all its right, title and interest in, to and under, all INDs, CTAs, safety databases and other Regulatory Documentation with respect to the Licensed Compounds and Licensed Products then held by Protagonist, its Affiliates and Third Party Subcontractors; and

(b) upon Janssen's request, Protagonist shall, and shall cause its Third Party manufacturer(s) (subject to the terms of any applicable agreement(s) with such Third Party Manufacturer(s)), to transfer existing Manufacturing processes for the Compound API and Licensed Products to Janssen (or its designee) and to provide reasonable technical assistance to Janssen (or its designee) in establishing Manufacturing processes for the Licensed Compounds and Licensed Products for a period of up to [\*] following the start of the License Term.

(c) If Janssen did not pay the Opt-In Maintenance Fee, then Protagonist shall not be required to take any of the actions described in Section 5.2.1(a) or (b) with respect to the Initial Compound and Initial Product unless and until Janssen pays Protagonist the Milestone Payment for Milestone Event C or an equivalent payment.

Section 5.3.1 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

5.3.1. **Responsibility; Diligence** . Janssen shall have the sole right and authority, at its sole cost and expense (other than with respect to the Collaboration Activities), to Develop

Licensed Compounds and Licensed Products in the Field in the Territory. Janssen shall use Commercially Reasonable Efforts to Develop and obtain Marketing Approval for one (1) Licensed Product, whether it is the Initial Product or a 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product, for each of CD and UC (which may be the same Licensed Product) in each of the Major Market Countries. Janssen shall conduct all Development of Licensed Compounds and Licensed Products in accordance with the terms and conditions of this Agreement, in good scientific manner and in compliance with Applicable Law including, as applicable, those relating to GLP, GCP, pharmacovigilance and safety reporting, and requirements for the protection of human subjects.

Section 5.6.1 is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

5.6.1. **Responsibility; Diligence** . Subject to Section 5.6.2, Janssen shall have the sole right and authority, at its sole cost and expense, to Commercialize the Licensed Compounds and Licensed Products in the Field in the Territory. Janssen shall use Commercially Reasonable Efforts to Commercialize each Licensed Product, whether it is the Initial Product or a 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product, in each of the Major Market Countries following receipt of Marketing Approval of such Licensed Product in the applicable country. Janssen shall conduct all such Commercialization in accordance with the terms and conditions of this Agreement and in compliance with Applicable Law.

Section 5.6.2(b) is amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

(b) *Co-Detailing Option* . Janssen hereby grants Protagonist an option to provide, at Protagonist's election, up to thirty percent (30%) of the Details for Licensed Products (other than Combination Products) in the U.S. for all approved Indications, as further described in this Section 5.6.2 (the "**Co-Detailing Option**"). Protagonist shall have the right to exercise the Co-Detailing Option independently with respect to the Initial Product and each 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product that Janssen Commercializes. Notwithstanding the foregoing, (i) if Protagonist does not exercise the Co-Detailing Option with respect to the first Initial Product for which Janssen delivers top-line results in accordance with Section 5.6.2(c), then the Co-Detailing Option shall not apply to any future Initial Products and this Section 5.6.2 shall become null and void with respect to the Initial Products, and (ii) if Protagonist does not exercise the Co-Detailing Option with respect to a particular 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product for which Janssen delivers top-line results in accordance with Section 5.6.2(c), then the Co-Detailing Option shall no longer apply to such 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product and this Section 5.6.2 shall become null and void with respect to such 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product. If Protagonist exercises the Co-Detailing Option with respect to two or more Licensed Products, Protagonist shall not have the right to provide more than thirty percent (30%) of the aggregate number of Details for all such Licensed Products nor more than thirty percent (30%) of the Details for any such Licensed Product. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Janssen shall have the right, upon [\*] written notice where such Co-Detailing Option has not as of such time been exercised, or upon [\*] written notice where such option has as of such time been exercised by Protagonist, to terminate the Co-Detailing Option and Protagonist's rights under this Section 5.6.2 in the event of the occurrence of a Restricted Change of Control of Protagonist or an assignment of this Agreement in its entirety by Protagonist (other than an assignment to

[\*] = Certain confidential information contained in this document, marked by brackets, is omitted because it is both (i) not material and (ii) would be competitively harmful if publicly disclosed.

---

an Affiliate of Protagonist), unless Janssen otherwise consents, which consent may be withheld in Janssen's sole discretion.

## **VII. License Grants**

Section 6.1.2 is hereby amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

6.1.2. Prior to the start of the License Term, and subject to Section 4.1.4(c), neither Party shall conduct any Development, Manufacture or Commercialization of the Licensed Compounds or Licensed Products except pursuant to a Research Plan or a Development Plan or as otherwise expressly permitted by this Agreement.

Section 6.3.1 is hereby amended to read in its entirety as follows:

6.3.1. **Development Term Sublicensing** . Prior to the start of the License Term, except as set forth in Section 3.6.2, Janssen may not sublicense to any Third Party any of the rights granted to it by Protagonist under Section 6.1.1 without the prior written consent of Protagonist, which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed by Protagonist. Janssen may grant sublicenses to one or more Affiliates without the consent of Protagonist.

Section 6.3.2 is hereby amended to read in its entirety as follows:

6.3.2. **License Term Sublicensing** . During the License Term, Janssen may grant and authorize sublicenses of any of the rights granted to it by Protagonist under Section 6.1.1 without the consent of Protagonist to one or more of its Affiliates or to one or more Third Parties through multiple tiers. Each sublicense shall be pursuant to a written agreement that is subject to and consistent with the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Janssen shall remain directly responsible and fully liable to Protagonist for the performance of each sublicensee in accordance with this Agreement. Janssen shall provide to Protagonist a copy of each sublicense agreement that grants to any Third Party rights to Develop and/or Commercialize a Licensed Compound or License Product, within [\*] following the execution thereof, *provided* that Janssen shall be permitted to redact commercially sensitive terms to the extent such terms are not necessary for Protagonist to confirm its rights hereunder. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Janssen shall not be obligated to provide to Protagonist any sublicense agreement that is solely for the performance of services on behalf of Janssen, its Affiliates or its sublicensees, provided that such service provider does not obtain under such agreement any rights to Develop or Commercialize any Licensed Compound or Licensed Product for its own account.

Section 6.7 is hereby amended to read in its entirety as follows:

### **6.7. Exclusivity .**

6.7.1. During the Exclusivity Period, neither Protagonist nor any of its Affiliates shall (a) Develop (including research), Manufacture, make, have made, use, have used, Commercialize, import, have imported, sell, have sold, offer for sale or have offered for

[\*] = Certain confidential information contained in this document, marked by brackets, is omitted because it is both (i) not material and (ii) would be competitively harmful if publicly disclosed.

---

sale any Competing Product for any IBD Indication; or (b) collaborate with, license, enable or otherwise authorize or grant any rights to any Third Party to do any of the activities described in clause (a), or enter into any agreement, amendment to an existing agreement or option to do any of the activities described in clause (a), except in any case (clause (a) or (b)) to the extent necessary to perform Protagonist's obligations under this Agreement. The restrictions set forth in this Section 6.7 shall not apply to an Acquirer of Protagonist, *provided* that such Acquirer Segregates any activities that would otherwise be prohibited by this Section 6.7.

6.7.2. For purposes of this Section 6.7:

(a) “ **Competing Product** ” means any product comprising a peptide or small molecule that (i) has an IC50 value of less than or equal to [\*] nanomolar (nM), as determined in the [\*]; or (ii) has an affinity (Kd) for IL23R less than or equal to [\*]nM, as determined by [\*] , and, in each of case (i) and (ii), is Directed to IL23R.

(b) “ **Exclusivity Period** ” means the period commencing on the Effective Date and terminating on the date of Initiation of the first Phase 3 Clinical Trial (including Initiation of the Phase 3 portion of a Phase 2/3 Clinical Trial) of the first Licensed Product;

(c) “ **IBD Indication** ” means any chronic intestinal disease that is characterized by inflammation of the bowel, including, without limitation, UC and CD;

(d) “ **Directed to IL23R** ” means, with respect to a product:

(i) Protagonist or its Affiliates Develop (including research) or Commercialize such product based on its antagonist activity against IL23R; or

(ii) Protagonist or its Affiliates test such product to assess its activity against IL23R, where such testing is not required by Applicable Law or requested by a Regulatory Authority .

and

(e) “ **Segregate** ” means, with respect to an activity, to use reasonable, good faith efforts to segregate such activity from the Development, Manufacturing and Commercialization of Licensed Compounds and Licensed Products under this Agreement, including using such efforts to ensure that: (i) no personnel involved in performing such activity on behalf of the Acquirer have access to non-public plans or information relating to the Development, Manufacturing and Commercialization of Licensed Compounds and Licensed Products under this Agreement; and (ii) no personnel involved in performing the Development, Manufacturing and Commercialization of Licensed Compounds and Licensed Products under this Agreement have access to non-public plans or information relating to such activity of the Acquirer.

## VIII. Financial Terms



Section 7.1 is hereby amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

**7.1. Upfront Payments .** On or after the Effective Date, Protagonist shall submit an invoice to Janssen for Fifty Million Dollars (\$50,000,000) as a one-time, non-refundable, non-creditable upfront payment in partial consideration of the license and rights granted by Protagonist to Janssen under this Agreement. Such invoice shall be due and payable within [\*] after receipt of such invoice by Janssen. On or after the First Amendment Effective Date, Protagonist shall submit an invoice to Janssen for Twenty Five Million Dollars (\$25,000,000) as a one-time, non-refundable, non-creditable payment. Such invoice shall be due and payable within [\*] after receipt of such invoice by Janssen.

Section 7.2 is hereby amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

**7.2. Cost Sharing and Reimbursement .**

**7.2.1. Phase 1 Costs.** Protagonist shall be responsible for one hundred percent (100%) of the Phase 1 Development Costs and Phase 1 CMC Development Costs for the Initial Product. Subject to Section 3.3.1, Protagonist shall be responsible for one hundred percent (100%) of the Phase 1 Development Costs and Phase 1 CMC Development Costs for first Phase 1 Clinical Trial and associated Phase 1 Activities and Collaboration CMC Activities for the first 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product, up to a cumulative maximum of [\*], after which Janssen shall bear such costs for such Clinical Trial. For the first Clinical Trial of the second and third 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product (if any), and for any other first Phase 1 Clinical Trial and associated Phase 1 Activities and Collaboration CMC Activities of any further 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product for which Protagonist is responsible for conducting pursuant to Section 3.3.1(b), [\*] per Clinical Trial, after which Janssen shall bear such costs for such Clinical Trial) (with respect to a Party, such percentage is referred to as its “**Specified Phase 1 Percentage**”). Janssen shall bear all Phase 1 Development Costs and Phase 1 CMC Development Costs other than those described in this Section 7.2.1 as being the responsibility of Protagonist. For clarity, all Phase 1 Development Costs and Phase 1 CMC Development Costs for any Janssen Phase 1 Clinical Trial shall be borne solely by Janssen.

**7.2.2. Phase 2 Costs.**

Protagonist shall be responsible for twenty percent (20%) and Janssen shall be responsible for eighty percent (80%) of Phase 2 Development Costs and Phase 2 CMC Development Costs for the Initial Product and for the first Phase 2 Clinical Trial to be conducted for each of the first two 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Compounds (with respect to a Party, such percentage is referred to as its “**Specified Phase 2 Percentage**”). Notwithstanding the foregoing,

- (a) with respect to the Initial Product, Protagonist’s cumulative responsibility under this Section 7.2.2 shall not exceed [\*]; and
- (b) with respect to the 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Products, Protagonist’s cumulative responsibility under this Section 7.2.2 shall not exceed [\*].

Janssen shall bear all Phase 2 Development Costs and Phase 2 CMC Development Costs other than those described in this Section 7.2.2.

**7.2.3 Other Development Costs.** Janssen shall be responsible for one hundred percent (100%) of the Collaboration CMC Costs for any Phase 3 Clinical Trial(s) incurred by either Party or any of their Affiliates and all other costs of Development of the Initial Compound, Initial Product, 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Compounds and 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Products other than as set forth in Sections 3.9.2, 7.2.1 and 7.2.2.

**7.2.4. Reporting.** Within [\*] after the end of each Calendar Quarter during which either Party incurs any Phase 1 Development Costs, Phase 1 CMC Development Costs, Phase 2 Development Costs, Phase 2 CMC Development Costs or Collaboration CMC Costs (collectively, “**Development Costs**”) for which the other Party is responsible pursuant to Section 7.2.1, each Party will provide a written report to the other Party setting forth in reasonable detail such Development Costs incurred by it and its Affiliates during such Calendar Quarter.

**7.2.5. Reconciliation.** If a Party (a) incurs more than its Specified Percentage of Development Costs for a Calendar Quarter, or, with respect to Protagonist, if its Specified Percentage exceeds the caps set forth in Section 7.2.1 or 7.2.2, or (b) incurs Development Costs for which the other Party is responsible pursuant to Section 7.2.1, 7.2.2 or 7.2.3 in such Calendar Quarter, such Party shall be able to reconcile so that it only bears the Development Costs for which it is responsible. Each Party shall, within [\*] after delivery of the reports for such Calendar Quarter, invoice the other Party for an amount sufficient to reconcile its incurred costs to only such Development Costs for which it is responsible. Such invoices shall be sent by the Parties only after all expenses incurred by each Party in such Calendar Quarter have been agreed by the Parties and, if undisputed, shall be payable (i) within [\*] after receipt or, (ii) if disputed by the Party receiving such invoice, within [\*] after resolution of such dispute and, if such dispute is resolved against the invoicing Party, receipt of a correct invoice. “**Specified Percentage**” means the Phase 1 Specified Percentage or the Phase 2 Specified Percentage, as applicable.

**7.2.6. Overruns.** Notwithstanding the foregoing:

- (a) in the event a Party performing Phase 1 Activities or Phase 2 Activities for which it is responsible under the applicable Development Plan incurs more than [\*] of aggregate Development Costs budgeted for such activities in the applicable Development Budget (the amount more than [\*], “**Excess Development Costs**”), the other Party shall not be obligated to bear its Specified Percentage of such Excess Development Costs, except: (a) if the JSC approves such Excess Development Costs (either before or after they are incurred); or (b) to the extent such Excess Development Costs are attributable to (i) a change in Applicable Law, (ii) a force majeure event, (iii) variation in actual patient enrollment from

projected patient enrollment, (iv) a change to a Clinical Trial protocol required or requested by any Regulatory Authority, or (v) unanticipated increases in the cost of raw materials; and

(b) in the event a Party performing Collaboration CMC Activities for the Phase 1 Activities or Phase 2 Activities for which it is responsible under the CMC Development Plan incurs more than [\*] of aggregate Development Costs budgeted for such Collaboration CMC Activities in the applicable Development Budget, the other Party shall not be obligated to bear its Specified Percentage of such Excess Development Costs, except: (a) if the JSC approves such Excess Development Costs (either before or after they are incurred); or (b) to the extent such Excess Development Costs are attributable to (i) a change in Applicable Law, (ii) a force majeure event, or (iii) unanticipated increases in the cost of raw materials.

7.2.7. **Disputes.** Any disputes with respect to the amounts set forth in a report or invoice delivered under this Section 7.2 that are not resolved by the Parties within [\*] after such dispute is first raised shall be referred to the JSC for attempted resolution. If the JSC does not resolve such dispute within [\*], the Parties shall mutually select and engage an independent Third Party accounting firm that has no auditing or other financial relationship with either Party or any of its Affiliates to resolve such matter. Such accounting firm shall, as soon as reasonably practicable after such firm is engaged, deliver a report to each Party with its analysis and determination of such matter. Such determination shall be final and binding on the Parties. The costs of such firm's services shall be shared equally by the Parties.

7.2.8. **Audits.** The audit rights set forth in Section 7.7 shall apply to any payment made pursuant to this Section 7.2.

7.2.9. **No Double Charges.** Neither Party will double charge the other Party for any FTE Costs or other costs or expenses subject to reimbursement under this Section 7.2.

Section 7.3 is hereby amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

### 7.3. Development and Approval Milestones .

7.3.1. Janssen will notify Protagonist in writing within [\*] after the first achievement by Janssen or any of its Affiliates or sublicensees of any of the milestone events set forth in the table below (each, a “**Milestone Event**”). In consideration of the rights and licenses granted to Janssen hereunder, Janssen shall pay to Protagonist the applicable milestone payment set forth in the tables below (each, a “**Milestone Payment**”) within [\*] after receipt of an invoice from Protagonist with respect to achievement of each Milestone Event that occurs prior to or on the Phase 2A Completion Date and [\*] after receipt of an invoice from Protagonist with respect to achievement of each Milestone Event that occurs

- 32-

[\*] = Certain confidential information contained in this document, marked by brackets, is omitted because it is both (i) not material and (ii) would be competitively harmful if publicly disclosed.

---

after the Phase 2A Completion Date.

**Development and Approval Milestone Events :**

<b>Milestone Event</b>	<b>Milestone Payment for Initial Product</b>	<b>Milestone Payment for 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product</b>
A. [*]	[*]	[*]
B. [*]	[*]	[*]
C. [*]	[*]	[*]
D. Phase 3 Clinical Trial for CD Meets primary clinical endpoint	US\$100,000,000	US\$115,000,000
E. [*]	[*]	[*]
F. [*]	[*]	[*]
G. [*]	[*]	[*]
H. [*]	[*]	[*]
I. [*]	[*]	[*]
J. [*]	[*]	[*]
K. [*]	[*]	[*]
L. [*]	[*]	[*]
M. [*]	[*]	[*]
N. [*]	[*]	[*]

7.3.2. Each Milestone Payment shall be payable only once, even if the corresponding Milestone Event occurs more than once or with respect to more than one Licensed Product or (for each of Milestone Events J, K, L and M set forth in in the table in Section 7.3.3) with respect to more than one New Indication. Each Milestone Payment shall be non-refundable and non-creditable.

7.3.3. With respect to Milestone Event [\*], [\*] means [\*]. For clarity, if Milestone Event [\*] has not been achieved as of such time that Janssen or its Affiliate or sublicensee (a) [\*], or (b) [\*], then Milestone Event [\*] shall be deemed to have been achieved at such time.

7.3.4. With respect to the Milestone Events set forth in the table above in Section 7.3.1 and subject to Section 7.3.2, if for any reason (a) Milestone A does not occur before the occurrence of Milestone B, then Milestone A shall be deemed to occur concurrently with the occurrence of Milestone B; (b) Milestone B for a 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product does not occur before the occurrence of Milestone C for a 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product, then Milestone B shall be deemed to occur concurrently with the occurrence of Milestone C; (c) Milestone C for a 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product does not occur before the occurrence of Milestone D for a 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product, then Milestone C shall be deemed to occur concurrently with the occurrence of Milestone D; (d) Milestone D for the Initial Product or a 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product, respectively, does not occur before the occurrence of Milestone E the Initial Product or a 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product, respectively, then Milestone D shall be deemed to occur concurrently with the occurrence of Milestone E; (e)

Milestone K for the Initial Product or a 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product, respectively, does not occur before the occurrence of Milestone L for the Initial Product or a 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product, respectively, then Milestone K shall be deemed to occur concurrently with the occurrence of Milestone L and (f) Milestone L for the Initial Product or a 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product, respectively, does not occur before the occurrence of Milestone M for the Initial Product or a 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product, respectively, then Milestone L shall be deemed to occur concurrently with the occurrence of Milestone M.

Section 7.4 is hereby amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

7.4. **Sales Milestones.** Janssen will notify Protagonist in the applicable royalty report delivered pursuant to Section 7.5.4 the first time the aggregate Net Sales of Initial Products or 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Products in any Calendar Year by Janssen, its Affiliates and its sublicensees in the Territory exceed the amounts set forth in the following table (each, a “**Sales Milestone Event**”). In partial consideration of the rights and licenses granted to Janssen hereunder, Janssen shall pay to Protagonist the applicable milestone payment set forth in the table below (each, a “**Sales Milestone Payment**”) within [\*] after receipt of an invoice from Protagonist with respect to achievement of each Sales Milestone Event. Each Milestone Payment shall be non-refundable and non-creditable.

<b>Annual Aggregate Net Sales in the Territory Milestone Event</b>	<b>Milestone Payment for Initial Product</b>	<b>Milestone Payment for 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product</b>
Upon the first occasion that annual aggregate Net Sales of Licensed Products exceed [*]	[*]	[*]
Upon the first occasion that annual aggregate Net Sales of Licensed Products exceed [*]	[*]	[*]
Upon the first occasion that annual aggregate Net Sales of Licensed Products exceed [*]	[*]	[*]
Upon the first occasion that annual aggregate Net Sales of Licensed Products exceed [*]	[*]	[*]

Section 7.5.1 is hereby amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

7.5.1. **Royalty Rates.** In partial consideration of the licenses and rights granted by Protagonist to Janssen under this Agreement, Janssen shall pay to Protagonist royalties on the aggregate Net Sales of each Licensed Product by Janssen, its Affiliates and sublicensees in each country in the Territory during each Calendar Year of the Royalty Term for such Licensed Product in such country at the rates set forth in the table below.

<b>Annual Aggregate Net Sales of such Licensed Product in the Territory</b>	<b>Royalty Rate</b>
For that portion of annual Net Sales of such Licensed Product in the Territory in such Calendar Year less than [*]	[*]%
For that portion of annual Net Sales of such Licensed Product in the Territory in such Calendar Year greater than or equal to [*] and less than [*]	[*]%
For that portion of annual Net Sales of such Licensed Product in the Territory in such Calendar Year greater than or equal to [*] and less than [*]	[*]%
For that portion of annual Net Sales of such Licensed Product in the Territory in such Calendar Year greater than or equal to [*]	[*]%

By way of example, if annual Net Sales of a Licensed Product in the Territory during such Calendar Year were [\*], the royalties due with respect to such Licensed Product would equal the sum of (a) [\*]% of [\*] (i.e., [\*]) and (b) [\*]% of [\*] (i.e., [\*]), for a total of [\*].

Section 7.7.1 is hereby amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

7.7.1. Each Party shall keep (and cause its Affiliates, (sub)licensees and Third Party Subcontractors to keep) complete, true and accurate books of account and records for the purpose of determining the Development Costs shared or reimbursed by the Parties under Section 7.2 (the “**Cost Records**”); and Janssen shall keep (and cause its Affiliates, sublicensees and Third Party Subcontractors to keep) complete, true and accurate books of account and records for the purpose of determining royalties and Sales Milestone Payments payable by Janssen to Protagonist under Sections 7.4 and 7.5 (the “**Royalty Records**”).

## **IX. Intellectual Property**

Section 8.3.2(a) is hereby amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

(a) Prior to the start of the License Term, Janssen shall be responsible for prosecuting or causing to be prosecuted in the United States and in foreign countries Janssen Collaboration Patent Rights and Joint Collaboration Patent Rights, at [\*].

Section 8.3.3(a) is hereby amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

(a) Prior to the start of the License Term, Protagonist shall be responsible for prosecuting or causing to be prosecuted in the United States and in foreign countries the Protagonist Patent Rights other than the Joint Collaboration Patent Rights, at [\*] as provided in Section 8.3.5.

Section 8.3.3(d) is hereby amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

(d) Janssen shall have the right to consult with Protagonist regarding the content of the patent applications included in Protagonist Patent Rights, [\*] and correspondence, and to comment thereon to Protagonist, or at Protagonist's request, to Protagonist's designated outside counsel. Protagonist shall reasonably consider in good faith all such comments offered by Janssen; *provided*, *however*, that, except as provided below, all final decisions respecting conduct of the prosecution of said patent applications shall rest solely in the discretion of Protagonist. If Janssen wishes pursue patent protection on an invention relating to a Licensed Product and Protagonist decides not to pursue such patent protection, Janssen shall have the right to pursue in Protagonist's name, as applicable, patent rights related to such invention (collectively "**Janssen Elected Protagonist Patent Rights**") and shall keep Protagonist informed as to the prosecution and maintenance of such Janssen Elected Protagonist Patent Rights. Without limiting the foregoing, prior to the start of the License Term, Janssen may request a patent strategy meeting with Protagonist. Protagonist agrees to reasonably [\*] in good faith all of Janssen's comments at such meeting regarding the patent strategy with respect to the Protagonist IL23 Receptor Inhibitor Patent Rights. Any Patent Costs associated with subsequent actions requested by Janssen at such meeting or relating to the preparation, filing and/or maintenance of Janssen Elected Protagonist Patent Rights shall be at Janssen's expense.

Section 8.4.1 is hereby amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

8.4.1. Each Party shall inform the other Party promptly (and, in any case, within [\*]) of learning of any request for, or filing or declaration of, any Patent Proceeding relating to Protagonist Patent Rights or Collaboration Patent Rights for which such Party is responsible. The Parties shall thereafter consult and cooperate fully to determine a course of action with respect to any such Patent Proceeding. Except with respect to Janssen Collaboration Patent Rights following the start of the License Term, each Party has the right to review any submission, within reason, to be made in connection with the Patent Proceeding of the other Party and has the right to provide reasonable comments on any such submission related to Protagonist Patent Rights and Joint Collaboration Patent Rights, *provided* that such comments shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed and the responsible Party will consider such comments in good faith.

Section 8.4.2 is hereby amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

8.4.2. Prior to the start of the License Term, Protagonist shall have the first right, but not the obligation, to defend any Patent Proceeding relating to Protagonist Patent Rights or Joint Collaboration Patent Rights at its own expense; if Protagonist elects not to defend any such Patent Proceeding then Janssen shall have the right, but not the obligation, to defend such Patent Proceeding (other than any proceeding relating to the Protagonist-Controlled Patent Rights) at its own expense and in the name of Protagonist and Janssen (or just Protagonist or just Janssen, if the laws of the jurisdiction so dictate). Prior to the start of the License Term, Janssen shall have the first right, but not the obligation, to defend any Patent Proceeding relating to Janssen Collaboration Patent Rights at its own expense; if Janssen elects not to defend any such Patent Proceeding then Protagonist shall have the right, but not the obligation, to defend such Patent Proceeding at its own

expense and in the name of Protagonist and Janssen (or just Protagonist or just Janssen, if the laws of the jurisdiction so dictate).

Section 8.4.3 is hereby amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

8.4.3. Upon the start of the License Term and for the remainder of the Term, (a) Janssen shall have the sole right, but not the obligation, to defend any Patent Proceeding relating to Janssen Collaboration Patent Rights at its own expense, and (b) Janssen shall have the first right, but not the obligation, to defend any Patent Proceeding relating to the Protagonist Patent Rights (other than the Protagonist-Controlled Patent Rights) or Joint Collaboration Patent Rights at its own expense and in the name of Protagonist and Janssen (or just Protagonist or just Janssen, if the laws of the jurisdiction so dictate). If Janssen elects not to defend any such Patent Proceeding described in subclause (b) of this Section 8.4.3, then Protagonist shall have the right, but not the obligation, to defend such Patent Proceeding at its own expense and in the name of Protagonist and Janssen (or just Protagonist or just Janssen, if the laws of the jurisdiction so dictate).

Section 8.5.2 is hereby amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

8.5.2. Prior to the start of the License Term:

(a) Protagonist shall have the right, but not the obligation, to initiate and prosecute any such legal action, or to control the defense of any declaratory judgment action relating, to the Protagonist Patent Rights (other than Joint Collaboration Patent Rights) or any Protagonist Know-How at its own expense. The costs of any legal action commenced or the defense of any declaratory judgment shall be borne by Protagonist. Protagonist shall promptly inform Janssen if it elects not to exercise such right with respect to Protagonist Patent Rights and Janssen shall thereafter have the right at its sole cost to either initiate and prosecute such action or to control the defense of such declaratory judgment action (other than with respect to any Protagonist-Controlled Patent Rights) in the name of Protagonist and, if necessary, Janssen. Each Party shall have the right to be represented by counsel of its own choice.

(b) Janssen shall have the right, but not the obligation, to initiate and prosecute any such legal action at its own expense and in the name of Protagonist and Janssen (or just Protagonist or just Janssen, if the laws of the jurisdiction so dictate), or to control the defense of any declaratory judgment action relating to Janssen Collaboration Patent Rights, Joint Collaboration Patent Rights or any Janssen Collaboration Know-How. The costs of any legal action commenced or the defense of any declaratory judgment shall be borne by Janssen. Janssen shall promptly inform Protagonist if it elects not to exercise such right with respect to Collaboration Patent Rights and Protagonist shall thereafter have the right at its sole cost to either initiate and prosecute such action or to control the defense of such declaratory judgment action in the name of Protagonist and, if necessary, Janssen. Each Party shall have the right to be represented by counsel of its own choice.

Section 8.5.3 is hereby amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

- 37-

[\*] = Certain confidential information contained in this document, marked by brackets, is omitted because it is both (i) not material and (ii) would be competitively harmful if publicly disclosed.

---



8.5.3. Upon the start of the License Term:

(a) Janssen shall have the right, but not the obligation, to initiate and prosecute any such legal action, or to control the defense of any declaratory judgment action relating to, the Protagonist Patent Rights (other than the Protagonist-Controlled Patent Rights, but including any Protagonist Collaboration Patent Rights and any Joint Collaboration Patent Rights) or Joint Collaboration Patent Rights, or any Protagonist Know-How or Collaboration Know-How, at its own expense and in the name of Protagonist and Janssen (or just Protagonist or just Janssen, if the laws of the jurisdiction so dictate). The costs of any legal action commenced or the defense of any declaratory judgment shall be borne by Janssen. Janssen shall promptly inform Protagonist if it elects not to exercise such right with respect to such Protagonist Patent Rights or Protagonist Know-How and Protagonist shall thereafter have the right at its sole cost to either initiate and prosecute such action or to control the defense of such declaratory judgment action in the name of Protagonist and, if necessary, Janssen; *provided*, *however*, that Protagonist shall not have the right to initiate or prosecute such action, or to control the defense of such declaratory judgment action, to the extent it relates to any Protagonist IL23 Receptor Inhibitor Patent Right without Janssen's prior written consent, which Janssen may grant in its sole discretion. Each Party shall have the right to be represented by counsel of its own choice.

(b) Janssen shall be solely responsible for the enforcement or defense of any Janssen Collaboration Patent Rights and shall have no obligation to Protagonist with respect to such enforcement or defense, except as set forth in Section 8.5.5 (provided that Protagonist shall have no right of consultation or approval with respect to any proposed settlement).

(c) Protagonist shall be solely responsible for the enforcement or defense of any Protagonist-Controlled Patent Rights. Janssen shall have the right to consult with Protagonist regarding such enforcement or defense of any Retained Patent Rights, and to comment thereon to Protagonist, or at Protagonist's request, to Protagonist's designated outside counsel. Protagonist shall reasonably consider in good faith all such comments offered by Janssen; *provided*, *however*, that all final decisions respecting conduct of such enforcement or defense shall rest solely in the discretion of Protagonist, so long as such decisions do not adversely impact the Protagonist IL23 Receptor Inhibitor Patent Rights.

Section 8.6 is hereby amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

**8.6. Patent Term Restoration** . The Parties shall cooperate with each other in obtaining patent term restoration or supplemental protection certificates or their equivalents ("**Patent Term Restoration**") in any country in the Territory where applicable to Protagonist Patent Rights and Joint Collaboration Patent Rights. Janssen shall be solely responsible for any Patent Term Restoration relating to Janssen Collaboration Patent Rights and, after the start of the License Term, the Protagonist Patent Rights (other than the Protagonist-Controlled Patent Rights), and shall report to Protagonist on the status thereof through the Patent Representatives, but shall otherwise have no obligation to Protagonist with respect thereto.

[\*] = Certain confidential information contained in this document, marked by brackets, is omitted because it is both (i) not material and (ii) would be competitively harmful if publicly disclosed.

---

Section 8.10 is hereby amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

**8.10. Third Party In-Licenses.**

8.10.1. During the Term, Protagonist shall be responsible for the payment of any amounts that become due to any Third Party under any agreement to which Protagonist is a party that is in effect on the Effective Date (including any Existing Protagonist License Agreements) as a result of either Party's activities with respect to the Licensed Compounds or Licensed Products under this Agreement. In the event Janssen makes any such payment to a Third Party, Protagonist shall reimburse Janssen for such amount.

8.10.2. Prior to the start of the License Term, neither Party shall obtain a license from a Third Party under any Third Party Blocking Intellectual Property Rights without first

(i) discussing the proposed license with the other Party, (ii) obtaining the consent of the other Party, (such consent not to be unreasonably withheld, conditioned, or delayed), and (iii) if applicable, agreeing upon the allocation of any royalties or other consideration payable to such Third Party between those related to the use of such Third Party Blocking Intellectual Property Rights for Licensed Compounds or Licensed Products under this Agreement and those related to the use of such Third Party Blocking Intellectual Property Rights for any other products covered by such license. Such royalties and other consideration allocable to Licensed Compounds and Licensed Products will, unless otherwise agreed by the Parties, be shared in accordance with the principles set forth in Section 7.2 during the Development Term and be subject to the royalty reduction provisions set forth in Section 7.5.2(a) during the License Term. For the avoidance of doubt, any rights or licenses which a Party obtains under Third Party Blocking Intellectual Property Rights as a result of a merger with or acquisition of a Third Party who had prior to such transaction obtained such Third Party Blocking Intellectual Property Rights shall not be deemed a violation of this Section 8.10.2.

8.10.3. On and after the start of the License Term, if Janssen or its Affiliate or sublicensee is required, or [\*] it necessary for Janssen or one of its Affiliates or sublicensees, to obtain a license from a Third Party under any Third Party Blocking Intellectual Property Rights in a country, Janssen (or its Affiliate or sublicensee) shall have the sole right to obtain such license. Such royalties and other consideration allocable to Licensed Compounds and Licensed Products will, unless otherwise agreed by the Parties, be subject to the royalty reduction provisions set forth in Section 7.5.2(a) during the License Term. On and after the start of the License Term, Protagonist shall not obtain a license from a Third Party under any Third Party Blocking Intellectual Property Rights without Janssen's prior written consent. For the avoidance of doubt, any rights or licenses which Protagonist obtains under Third Party Blocking Intellectual Property Rights as a result of a merger with or acquisition of a Third Party who had prior to such transaction obtained such Third Party Blocking Intellectual Property Rights shall not be deemed a violation of this Section 8.10.3.

---

[\*] = Certain confidential information contained in this document, marked by brackets, is omitted because it is both (i) not material and (ii) would be competitively harmful if publicly disclosed.

8.10.4. To the extent (a) Protagonist obtains a license from a Third Party after the Execution Date under any Know-How or Patent Rights that (i) fall within the definition of Protagonist Know-How or Protagonist Patent Rights and (ii) are not Third Party Blocking Intellectual Property Rights and (b) the sublicensing of such Know-How or Patent Rights hereunder to Janssen triggers payments to such Third Party under such license agreement, they shall not be automatically sublicensed to Janssen hereunder as Protagonist Know-How or Protagonist Patent Patents unless and until Janssen and Protagonist agree on the appropriate allocation of any royalties or other consideration payable to such Third Party between those related to the use of such Know-How or Patent Rights for Licensed Compounds or Licensed Products under this Agreement and those related to the use of such Know-How or Patent Rights for any other products covered by such license. Such royalties and other consideration allocable to Licensed Compounds and Licensed Products will, unless otherwise agreed by the Parties, be shared in accordance with the principles set forth in Section 7.2 during the Development Term.

## **X. Confidentiality; Publicity**

Section 9.9 is hereby amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

**9.9. Scientific Publications** . Either Party may make oral or written publications (such as any abstracts, manuscripts, posters, slide presentations or other materials) of any activities or results relating to a Licensed Compound or Licensed Product, *provided* that (a) Janssen shall not have such right until the start of the License Term, except with Protagonist's prior written consent, which consent will not be unreasonably withheld, (b) the other Party shall first have the right to review and comment on a draft of any such material proposed for publication by such Party, including for purposes of ensuring that none of its Confidential Information is disclosed without its consent, and (c) such Party may not include any Confidential Information of the other Party in such publication without the other Party's prior written consent, which consent will not be unreasonably withheld. The publishing Party shall deliver a complete draft to the other Party at least [\*] ([\*] in the case of abstracts) prior to submitting the material to a publisher or initiating any other release. The non-publishing Party shall review any such material and give its comments to the publishing Party within [\*] ([\*] in the case of abstracts) after the delivery of such draft to the non-publishing Party, and the publishing Party shall consider such comments in good faith. The publishing Party shall comply with the non-publishing Party's request to: delete from any such proposed publication material prior to its submission or release any references to the non-publishing Party or any of its Confidential Information; or delay any submission or release for a period of up to an additional [\*] to permit the non-publishing Party to prepare and file, or have prepared and filed, any patent applications for any Collaboration Inventions as contemplated hereunder. For the avoidance of doubt, this Section 9.9 shall not apply to public disclosures required by Applicable Laws or the rules of the United States Securities and Exchange Commission or the Nasdaq Stock Market or similar security regulatory authorities or stock markets in other countries, as applicable, which are governed by Sections 9.4 and 9.5.

## **XI. Representations and Warranties**

Section 10.5.1 is hereby amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

10.5.1. **Assignments** . Each Party shall ensure that each individual employee or agent performing activities set forth in a Development Plan on behalf of such Party or its Affiliate during the Research Term or applicable Development Term shall have entered into an agreement with such Party or its Affiliate prior to the performance of any work thereunder by such employee or agent providing for the assignment to such Party or its Affiliate of all inventions and discoveries, whether or not patentable, made or arising in the course of the performance of such activities.

## **XII. Term and Termination**

Section 12.6.1(c) is hereby amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

(c) If this Agreement is terminated by Janssen during the conduct of any Phase 2 Activities or Collaboration CMC Activities for the Phase 2 Activities, Protagonist shall have [\*] after the date that Janssen notifies Protagonist of termination (or, in the event of termination pursuant to Section 4.1.4 or Section 4.2.4, the date of termination under Section 4.1.4 or Section 4.2.4, as applicable) to notify Janssen (i) whether Protagonist elects to have Janssen complete or wind down any such on-going Phase 2 Activities and (ii) whether Protagonist elects to have Janssen wind down or transfer to Protagonist any such ongoing Collaboration CMC Activities. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if Janssen terminates this Agreement pursuant to Section 12.3 or 12.4, then Protagonist shall not have the right to make the election described in this paragraph and Janssen shall wind down any ongoing activities as soon as practicable after the date of notice of termination. The following provisions of this Section 12.6.1(c) shall apply after Protagonist makes such elections.

(1) If Protagonist elects to have Janssen wind down on-going Phase 2 Activities or Collaboration CMC Activities, then Janssen shall wind-down such Phase 2 Activities or Collaboration CMC Activities as soon as practicable, subject to compliance with ethical and legal requirements, and the Parties shall continue to share the costs of such activities in accordance with Section 7.2 until such wind-down is complete.

(2) If Protagonist elects to have Janssen complete on-going Phase 2 Activities, then (x) Janssen shall continue to conduct such Phase 2 Activities in accordance with Article 3, (y) Protagonist shall be responsible for all of the Phase 2 Development Costs for such activities incurred after the effective date of termination, except that for a Licensed Product containing the Initial Compound, Janssen shall be responsible for [\*] after the effective date of termination, and (z) Article 2, Article 3 (other than Sections 3.4.5 and 3.4.6), Section 4.2.1, Article 6 and Section 10.5 shall survive to the extent applicable to, or necessary to conduct, such Phase 2 Activities, until the Phase 2 Data Package is delivered by Janssen to Protagonist in accordance with Section 4.2.1.

[\*] = Certain confidential information contained in this document, marked by brackets, is omitted because it is both (i) not material and (ii) would be competitively harmful if publicly disclosed.

---

(3) If Protagonist elects to have Janssen transfer to Protagonist on-going Collaboration CMC Activities, then Janssen shall use Commercially Reasonable Efforts to transfer, and Protagonist shall use Commercially Reasonable Efforts to assume, such activities as promptly as practicable (and, in any event, within [\*] after the effective date of termination). The Parties shall continue to share the costs of such activities in accordance with Section 7.2 until the effective date of termination and, thereafter, the costs of such activities shall be borne solely by Protagonist; *provided, however*, that each Party shall bear its own costs associated with the transfer of such Collaboration CMC Activities from Janssen to Protagonist. Protagonist shall reimburse Janssen for any such costs for which Protagonist is solely responsible incurred by Janssen and its Affiliates after the effective date of termination.

Section 12.6.1(g) is hereby amended by replacing it in its entirety with the following:

(g) Janssen shall, and hereby does, grant to Protagonist, as of the effective date of termination, on behalf of Janssen and its Affiliates, an exclusive (even as to Janssen and its Affiliates), perpetual, royalty-free, freely sublicensable through multiple tiers, transferable license under the Janssen Collaboration Know-How, Janssen Collaboration Patent Rights and Janssen's interest in the Joint Collaboration Patent Rights, whether related to the Initial Compound, any Initial Product, any 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Compound or any 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Product, solely to the extent necessary to Develop, make, have made, use, have used, sell, have sold, offer for sale, have offered for sale, import, have imported, and otherwise exploit, Manufacture and Commercialize Licensed Compounds and Licensed Products in the Field in the Territory.

Section 12.6.2 is hereby deleted in its entirety.

### **XIII. Protagonist IL23 Receptor Inhibitor Patent Rights**

The following is hereby added to Schedule 1.97:

<b>Cooley Docket Number</b>	<b>Title</b>	<b>Application No.</b>	<b>Application Date</b>	<b>Country</b>
[*]	[*]	[*]	[*]	[*]

### **XIV. Other Provisions.**

The Parties hereby confirm and agree that, as amended herein, the Agreement remains in full force and effect. This First Amendment may be executed in counterparts, each of which shall be deemed an original, but all of which together shall constitute one and the same instrument.

[\*] = Certain confidential information contained in this document, marked by brackets, is omitted because it is both (i) not material and (ii) would be competitively harmful if publicly disclosed.

---

Signatures transmitted via PDF shall be treated as original signatures. Article 14 of the Agreement shall apply, *mutatis mutandis* , to this First Amendment.

- 43-

[\*] = Certain confidential information contained in this document, marked by brackets, is omitted because it is both (i) not material and (ii) would be competitively harmful if publicly disclosed.

---

## **Exhibit H - 2<sup>nd</sup> Generation Development Plan**

[\*]

- 44-

[\*] = Certain confidential information contained in this document, marked by brackets, is omitted because it is both (i) not material and (ii) would be competitively harmful if publicly disclosed.

---

## Exhibit I – Updated Clinical Development Plan

[\*]

*{Signature Page Follows}*

- 45-

[\*] = Certain confidential information contained in this document, marked by brackets, is omitted because it is both (i) not material and (ii) would be competitively harmful if publicly disclosed.

---



IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Parties have caused this First Amendment to be executed as of the First Amendment Effective Date by their duly authorized representatives as set forth below.

**Protagonist Therapeutics, Inc.**

**Janssen Biotech, Inc.**

By: Dinesh V. Patel

By: Austin Clayton

Name: Dinesh V. Patel

Name: Austin Clayton

Title: President & CEO

Title: VP, Law

---



**CERTIFICATION OF CHIEF EXECUTIVE OFFICER**  
**Pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002**

I, Dinesh V. Patel, certify that:

1. I have reviewed this Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q of Protagonist Therapeutics, Inc.;
2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;
4. The registrant's other certifying officer(s) and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and we have:
  - a) Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
  - b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
  - c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and
  - d) Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and
5. The registrant's other certifying officer(s) and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
  - a) All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
  - b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: August 7, 2019

\_\_\_\_\_  
/s/ Dinesh V. Patel, Ph.D.  
**Dinesh V. Patel, Ph.D.**  
President, Chief Executive Officer  
(Principal Executive Officer)

---



**CERTIFICATION OF CHIEF FINANCIAL OFFICER**  
**Pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002**

I, Don Kalkofen, certify that:

1. I have reviewed this Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q of Protagonist Therapeutics, Inc.;
2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;
4. The registrant's other certifying officer(s) and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and we have:
  - a) Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
  - b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
  - c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and
  - d) Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and
5. The registrant's other certifying officer(s) and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
  - a) All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
  - b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: August 7, 2019

\_\_\_\_\_  
/s/ Don Kalkofen  
**Don Kalkofen**  
Chief Financial Officer



**CERTIFICATION OF CHIEF EXECUTIVE OFFICER AND CHIEF FINANCIAL OFFICER**

Pursuant to the requirement set forth in Rule 13a-14(b) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, (the “Exchange Act”) and Section 1350 of Chapter 63 of Title 18 of the United States Code (18 U.S.C. §1350), Dinesh V. Patel, Chief Executive Officer of Protagonist Therapeutics, Inc. (the “Company”), and Don Kalkofen, Chief Financial Officer of the Company, each hereby certify that, to the best of his knowledge:

1. The Company’s Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the period ended June 30, 2019, to which this Certification is attached as Exhibit 32.1 (the “Periodic Report”), fully complies with the requirements of Section 13(a) or Section 15(d) of the Exchange Act; and
2. The information contained in the Periodic Report fairly presents, in all material respects, the financial condition and results of operations of the Company.

Date: August 7, 2019

/s/ Dinesh V. Patel, Ph.D.

**Dinesh V. Patel, Ph.D.**

President, Chief Executive Officer

Date: August 7, 2019

/s/ Don Kalkofen

**Don Kalkofen**

Chief Financial Officer

“This certification accompanies the Form 10-Q to which it relates, is not deemed filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission and is not to be incorporated by reference into any filing of Protagonist Therapeutics, Inc. under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (whether made before or after the date of the Form 10-Q), irrespective of any general incorporation language contained in such filing.”

---